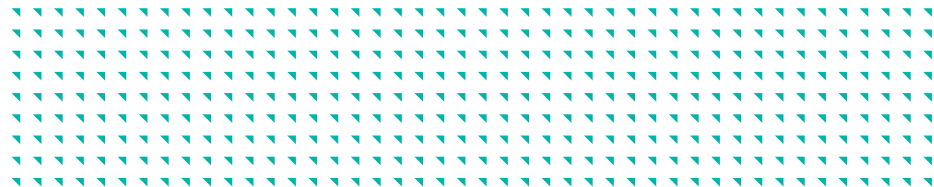




CITROËN C3



HANDBOOK

INSPIRED BY YOU

Access to the Handbook



MOBILE APPLICATION

Install the **Scan MyCITROËN** application (content available offline).



Then select:

- the vehicle,
- the issue period corresponding to the vehicle's initial registration date.



ONLINE

Visit the **CITROËN** website and select the '**MyCITROËN**' section to view or download the handbook or go to the following address:

<http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/>



Scan this QR Code for direct access.

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle and body style,
- the issue period of the handbook corresponding to the vehicle's initial registration date.



This symbol indicates the latest information available.

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Citroën C3.

This document presents the key information and recommendations required for you to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety. We strongly recommend familiarising yourself with this document and the Warranty and Maintenance Record.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are for guidance only.

Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this guide.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

Key



Safety warning



Additional information



Environmental protection feature



Left-hand drive vehicle



Right-hand drive vehicle



Location of the equipment / button described using a black area.



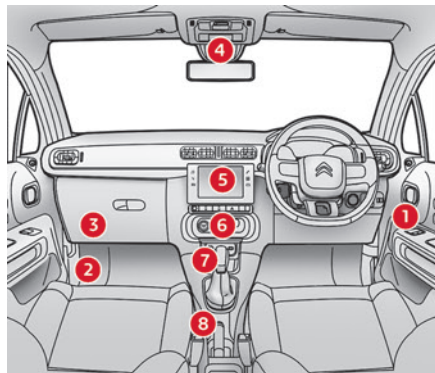
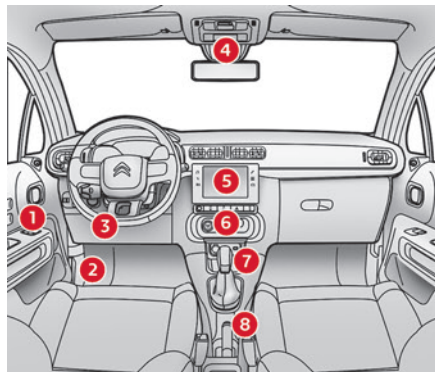
Overview ■	38	Heating/Manual air conditioning	38	Child lock	72
	38	Automatic air conditioning	40		
Eco-driving ■	41	Front demist - defrost	41	Driving 6	
	41	Rear screen demist - defrost	41	Driving recommendations	74
	41	Courtesy lamp	42	Starting / Switching off the engine with the key	75
Instruments 1	44	Panoramic glass sunroof	45	Starting / Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting	77
Instrument panels	7	Interior fittings		Parking brake	79
Warning and indicator lamps	8	Boot fittings		5-speed manual gearbox	79
Indicators	13	Rear shelf (commercial version)		6-speed manual gearbox	79
Total distance recorder	16			Automatic gearbox	79
Equipment configuration for vehicles without screen	17	Lighting and visibility 4	47	Gear efficiency indicator	82
Monochrome screen C	17	Lighting control	48	Hill start assist	82
Touch screen	19	Direction indicators	48	Stop & Start	83
Trip computer	20	Automatic illumination of headlamps	49	Under-inflation detection	84
Setting the date and time	22	Daytime running lamps / Sidelamps	49	CITROËN ConnectedCAM®	86
		Guide-me-home and welcome lighting	50	Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations	87
		Automatic headlamp dipping	51	Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation	88
Access 2		Headlamp beam height adjustment	51	Speed limiter	90
Remote control / Key	23	Wiper control stalk	53	Cruise control - particular recommendations	92
Keyless Entry and Starting	24	Automatic wipers	53	Cruise control	92
Back-up procedures	26	Changing a wiper blade		Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk	
Doors	28			Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance	94
Boot	28	Safety 5	55	Distraction detection	96
Central locking	29	General safety recommendations	55	Lane Departure Warning System	97
Alarm	29	Hazard warning lamps	56	Blind Spot Monitoring System	98
Electric windows	30	Horn	56	Parking sensors	99
		Emergency or assistance call	58	Reversing camera	100
Ease of use and comfort 3		Electronic stability control (ESC)	59		
Front seats	32	Seat belts	61		
Rear bench seat	34	Airbags	63		
Steering wheel adjustment	35	Child seats	65		
Mirrors	35	Deactivating the front passenger airbag	67		
Ventilation	36	ISOFIX child seats	72		
		i-Size child seats			

Practical information	7	Bluetooth® audio system	10	Settings	187
Refuelling	103	First steps	143	Frequently asked questions	189
Misfuel prevention (Diesel)	104	Steering mounted controls	144		
Compatibility of fuels	104	Menus	144		
Snow chains	105	Radio	145		
Towing device	105	DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	146		
Energy economy mode	106	Media	147		
Roof bars	106	Telephone	149		
Bonnet	107	Frequently asked questions	152		
Engine compartment	108				
Checking levels	109				
Checks	110	CITROËN Connect Radio	11		
AdBlue® (BlueHDi)	112	First steps	155		
Advice on care and maintenance	114	Steering mounted controls	156		
AIRBUMP® protections	115	Menus	157		
		Applications	158		
		Radio	158		
		DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	160		
		Media	160		
		Telephone	162		
		Settings	165		
		Frequently asked questions	167		
In the event of a breakdown	8	CITROËN Connect Nav	12		
Warning triangle	116	First steps	169		
Running out of fuel (Diesel)	116	Steering mounted controls	170		
Tool kit	116	Menus	171		
Temporary puncture repair kit	118	Voice commands	172		
Spare wheel	120	Navigation	174		
Changing a bulb	123	Connected navigation	176		
Changing a fuse	127	Applications	178		
12 V battery	132	Radio	181		
Towing	135	DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	182		
		Media	183		
		Telephone	184		
Technical data	9				
Engine technical data and towed loads	138				
Petrol engines	139				
Diesel engines	141				
Dimensions	141				
Identification markings	142				

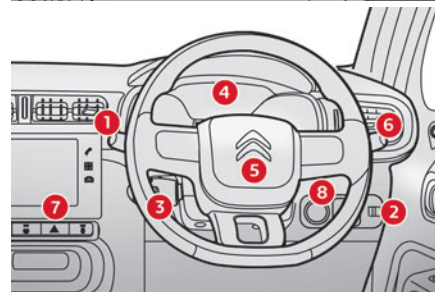
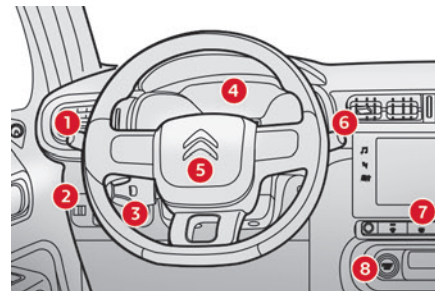
Alphabetical index ■
Access to additional videos

bit.ly/helpPSA

Instruments and controls



- 1 Door mirrors
Blind Spot Monitoring System
Electric windows
- 2 Bonnet release
- 3 Dashboard fuses
- 4 Courtesy lamp
Interior rear view mirror
Emergency or assistance call
CITROËN ConnectedCAM®
- 5 Touch screen
Monochrome screen C
Setting the date and time
- 6 Ventilation
Heating
Manual air conditioning
Automatic air conditioning
Front demisting/defrosting
Rear screen demisting/defrosting
- 7 5-speed manual gearbox
6-speed manual gearbox
Automatic gearbox
Gear shift indicator
Hill start assist
Stop & Start
- 8 Parking brake



- 1 Lighting control stalk
Direction indicators
- 2 Headlamp beam height adjustment
- 3 Speed limiter
Cruise control
Speed limit recognition
- 4 Instrument panels
Warning and indicator lamps
Indicators
Distance recorders

5 Steering wheel adjustment

Horn

6 Wiper control stalk

Trip computer

7 Central locking

Hazard warning lamps

8 Switching the engine on/off

Eco-driving

Eco-driving refers to a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions.

Optimise your use of the gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up promptly. While accelerating, change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, favour automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear efficiency indicator prompts you to engage the most suitable gear: whenever this indication is displayed on the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

With an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal and press the accelerator gradually. These attitudes help to save fuel, reduce CO₂ emissions and decrease general traffic noise.

If the vehicle has the steering-mounted "CRUISE" control, use cruise control at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Use electrical equipment wisely

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning. At speeds above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open. Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof blind and window blinds, etc.). Unless automatically regulated, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting functions, if they are not managed automatically.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and foglamps when the visibility conditions do not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game, etc.) to help reduce consumption of electrical energy, and hence fuel.

Disconnect all portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and minimise wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack,

bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Preferably, use a roof box.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit summer tyres.

Comply with servicing instructions

Check tyre pressures regularly, with the tyres cold, referring to the label in the door aperture on the driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey.
- at each change of season.
- after a long period out of use.

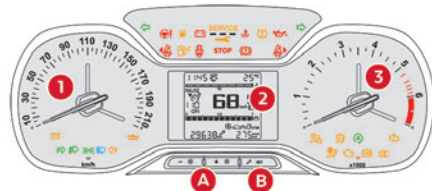
Do not overlook the spare wheel and, where applicable, the tyres on your trailer or caravan. Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle will emit pollution. Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to restore your vehicle's nitrogen oxide emissions to regulatory compliance.

When filling the fuel tank, do not continue after the third nozzle cut-out, to avoid overflow.

You will only see the fuel consumption of your new vehicle settle down to a consistent average after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres).

LCD symbols instrument panel



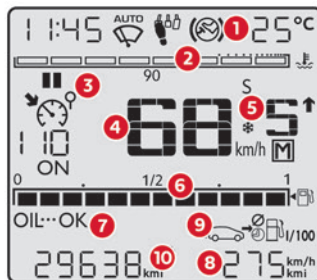
Dials

1. Speedometer (mph or km/h)
2. Display screen
3. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm)

Control buttons

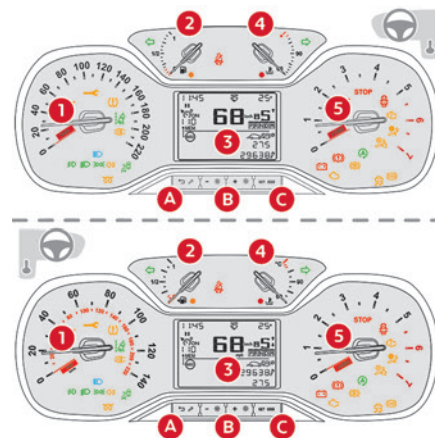
- A.** General lighting dimmer.
Depending on version: movements in a menu, a list; changing a value.
- B.** Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Resetting of the selected function (service indicator or trip distance recorder).
Depending on version: enter the configuration menu (long press), confirm a choice (short press).

Display screen



1. Outside temperature
2. Engine coolant temperature gauge
3. Cruise control or speed limiter settings
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h)
5. Gear shift indicator and/or selector position, gear and Sport mode indicator with an automatic gearbox
6. Fuel level
7. Engine oil level indicator (appears a few seconds after switching on ignition, then disappears)
8. Service indicator or range associated with the AdBlue® and the SCR system (miles or km) then, trip distance recorder (miles or km)
9. Trip computer
10. Total distance recorder (miles or km)

LCD text instrument panel



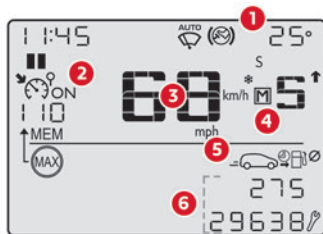
Dials

1. Speedometer (mph or km/h).
2. Fuel level indicator.
3. Display screen.
4. Engine coolant temperature gauge.
5. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm).

Control buttons

- A. Resetting the service indicator.
Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Depending on version: go back up a level, cancel the current operation.
- B. General lighting dimmer.
Depending on version: movements in a menu, a list; changing a value.
- C. Resetting the trip distance recorder.
Depending on version: enter the configuration menu (long press), confirm a choice (short press).

Display screen



1. Outside temperature
2. Cruise control or speed limiter settings
Speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h)

4. Gear shift indicator and/or selector position, gear and Sport mode indicator with an automatic gearbox
5. Trip computer and Stop & Start time counter.
6. Display area: trip distance recorder (miles or km), service indicator or range associated with the AdBlue® and the SCR system (miles or km), total distance recorder, alert messages or state of functions

If the vehicle is not equipped with an audio system or touch screen, this display allows you to configure certain equipment.
For more information on **Configuring equipment for vehicles without a screen**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lamps inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.

Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether

the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.

For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning lamp continuously lit

The illumination of a red or orange warning lamp indicates the occurrence of a fault that needs further investigation.

If a warning lamp remains lit

The references (1), (2) and (3) in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.

(1): You must stop the vehicle.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

List of warning and indicator lamps

Red warning/indicator lamps

STOP

STOP Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

A serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering or a major electrical fault has been detected.

Carry out (1) and then (2).

Engine self-diagnostics system(Petrol or Diesel)

 **STOP** Fixed. A major engine fault has been detected.

Carry out (1) and then (2).

Parking brake

 Fixed. The parking brake is applied or not properly released.

Braking

 Fixed. The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly. Carry out (1), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

  Fixed. The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty. Carry out (1) and then (2).

Power steering (only on the LCD symbols instrument panel)

 Fixed. The power steering has a fault.

Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Door(s) open

 Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access.

A door or the tailgate is not properly closed (speed less than 6 mph (10 km/h)).

 Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access, accompanied by an audible signal.

A door or the tailgate is not properly closed (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened

 Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.

A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.

Front left seat belt not fastened/unfastened

 Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an audible signal.

The front left passenger seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.

Front right seat belt not fastened/unfastened

 Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an audible signal.

The front right passenger seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.

12 V battery charge

 Fixed. The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.). Clean and retighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

Engine oil pressure

 Fixed. There is a fault with the engine lubrication system. Carry out (1) and then (2).

Maximum engine coolant temperature

 Fixed. The temperature of the cooling system is too high. Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Orange warning/indicator lamps

Engine self-diagnostics system

 Flashing. The engine management system has a fault.

There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.

You **must** carry out (2).



Fixed.

The emissions control system has a fault.

The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started.

Carry out (3) without delay.

Engine self-diagnostics system(Petrol or Diesel)



Fixed.

A minor engine fault has been

detected.

Carry out (3).

Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake



Flashing.

The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily so as to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle ahead.



Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

Collision Risk Alert / Active Safety Brake



Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.

The system has been deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)



Fixed.

The anti-lock braking system has a fault.

The vehicle retains conventional braking.

Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

Under-inflation



Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

The pressure in one or more tyres is too low. Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible.

Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.



Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.

The tyre pressure monitoring system is faulty.

Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored.

Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible and carry out (3).

Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)



Flashing.

DSC/ASR regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.



Fixed.

The DSC/ASR system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

Airbags



Fixed.

One of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners is faulty.

Carry out (3).

Front passenger airbag (ON)



Fixed.

The front passenger airbag is activated. The control is in the "ON" position.

In this case, do NOT install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - Risk of serious injury!

Front passenger airbag (OFF)



Fixed.

The front passenger airbag is deactivated.

The control is in the "OFF" position.

A "rearward facing" child seat can be installed, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).

Particle filter(Diesel)



Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the risk of particle filter blockage.

The particle filter is starting to saturate.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.



Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message signalling that the additive level in the particle filter is too low.

The minimum level of the additive tank is reached.

Quickly have the tank topped up: carry out (3)

Low fuel level



Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

When it first comes on, there remains **approximately 5 litres of fuel** in the tank (reserve).

Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel.

Never drive until completely empty, as this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.

Water in Diesel fuel filter (only on the LCD symbols instrument panel)



Fixed.

The Diesel filter contains water.

Carry out (2) without delay - risk of damage to the injection system!

Lane Departure Warning System (only on the LCD text instrument panel)



Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal.

A lane marking has been crossed on the left or right.

Turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction to return to the correct trajectory.



Fixed, accompanied by an onscreen message.

The system has a fault.

Stay alert and drive carefully, then carry out (3).

AdBlue®(with 1.6 BlueHDi Euro 6.1)



Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a

message indicating the remaining driving range. The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 370 miles (2,400 and 600 km). You must quickly top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (3).



AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range. The driving range is less than 375 miles (600 km).

You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid a breakdown**, or carry out (3).



AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented. The AdBlue® tank is empty: the regulatory engine immobiliser prevents the engine from being restarted.

To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (2).

You **must** add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

AdBlue®(with 1.5 BlueHDi Euro 6.2/ 6.3)



On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the remaining driving range.

The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).

You must top up the AdBlue®.



Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a

message indicating the remaining driving range. The remaining driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km). You must **quickly** top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (3).



Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range. The remaining driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).

You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid starting being prevented**, or carry out (3).



Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the engine immobiliser system required by legislation prevents the engine from starting. To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2).

It is **essential** to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

SCR emissions control system(BlueHDi)



Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.

This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.



AdBlue® warning lamp flashing upon switching on the ignition, with the Service and Engine

self-diagnostics warning lamps on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range. Depending on the message displayed, it may be possible to drive for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine immobiliser is triggered. Carry out (3) without delay, to **avoid starting being prevented**.

   AdBlue® warning lamp flashing upon switching on the ignition, with the Service and Engine self-diagnostics warning lamps on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented. The engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (over the authorised driving limit after confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system). To start the engine, carry out (2).

Service

 Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message. One or more minor faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected. Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel. It is possible to deal with some faults yourself, such as changing the battery of the remote control. For other faults, such as with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).

 Fixed, accompanied by the display of a

message.

One or more major faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected. Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel, then carry out (3).

  Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then

fixed.

The servicing interval has been exceeded. The vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.

Only with BlueHDi Diesel engines.

Diesel engine preheating

 Temporarily on (up to approximately 30 seconds in severe weather conditions).

When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.

Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting.

When the warning lamp goes off, starting will occur immediately if you press and hold:

- the clutch pedal with a manual gearbox.
- the brake pedal with an automatic gearbox.

If the engine does not start, make the engine starting request again, while keeping your foot on the pedal.

Rear fog lamp

 Fixed. The lamp is on.

Green warning/indicator lamps

Blind spot monitoring (only on the LCD text instrument panel)

 Fixed. The function has been activated.

Stop & Start

 Fixed. When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.

 Flashing temporarily. STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.

Direction indicators

 Flashing with audible signal. The direction indicators are on.

Sidelamps

 Fixed. The lamps are on.

Front foglamps

 Fixed. The front foglamps are lit.

Automatic headlamp dipping

 Fixed. The function has been activated via the touch screen (**Driving / Vehicle** menu). The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.

Dipped beam headlamps

 Fixed. The lamps are on.

Blue warning/indicator lamps

Main beam headlamps

-  Fixed.
The lamps are on.

Black/white warning lamps

Foot on the brake

-  Fixed.
Omission or insufficient pressure on the brake pedal.

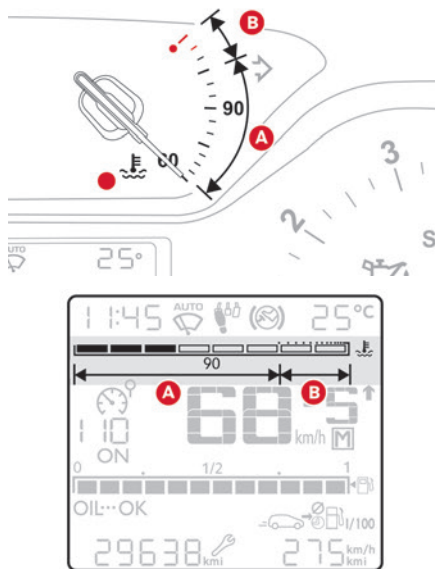
With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of position P.

Foot on the clutch (only on the LCD symbols instrument panel)

-  Fixed.
Stop & Start: the change to START mode is rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.
Fully depress the clutch pedal.

Indicators

Engine coolant temperature indicator



With the engine running:

- In zone **A**, the temperature is correct.
- In zone **B**, the temperature is too high; the associated warning lamp and the central **STOP** warning lamp come on in red on the instrument

panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

You must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

! After switching off the ignition, carefully open the bonnet and check the coolant level.

i For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Service indicator

The servicing information is expressed in terms of distance (kilometres or miles) and time (months or days).

The alert is given at whichever of these two terms is reached first.

The servicing information is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the version of the vehicle:

- The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.
- An alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

i The value indicated is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service. The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.

Service spanner

 On temporarily when the ignition is switched on.

Between 620 and 1,860 miles (1,000 and 3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.

 Fixed, when the ignition is switched on. The next service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).

Have your vehicle serviced very soon.

Service spanner flashing



 Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.

(With BlueHDi Diesel engines, combined with the Service warning lamp.)

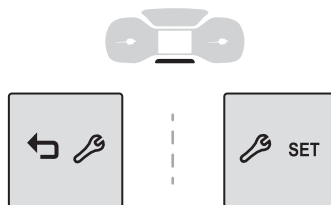
The servicing interval has been exceeded.

Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.

- Switch off the ignition.



- Press and hold this button.
- Switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown.
- Release the button when **=0** is displayed; the spanner disappears.

i If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information

The service information can be accessed at any time.

- Press this button.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version.)

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the engine oil level status is displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds upon

switching the ignition on, after the servicing information.

i The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct

This is indicated, depending on the instrument panel, by the display of **"OIL OK"** or by the message **"Oil level correct"**.

Oil level incorrect

This is indicated, depending on the instrument panel, by the display of **"OIL"** or by the message **"Oil level incorrect"**, accompanied by the lighting of the Service warning lamp and an audible signal.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil level indicator fault

This is indicated, depending on the instrument panel, by the display of **"OIL_ _"** or by the message **"Oil level measurement invalid"**, accompanied by the lighting of the Service warning lamp and an audible signal. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

AdBlue® range indicators (BlueHDi)

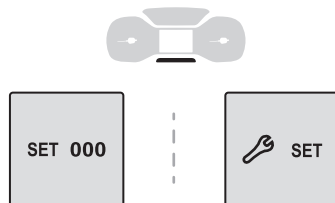
The Diesel BlueHDi engines are equipped with a system that associates the SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) emissions control system and the Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases. They cannot function without AdBlue® fluid.

When the level of AdBlue® falls below the reserve level (between 1,500 and 0 miles (2,400 and 0 km)), a warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on and an estimate of the distance that can be travelled before engine starting is prevented is displayed in the instrument panel.

! The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty. It is then no longer possible to start the engine until the minimum level of AdBlue® has been topped up.

Manual display of the range

While the driving range is greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km), it is not displayed automatically.



► Press this button to temporarily display the driving range.

Actions required related to a lack of AdBlue®

The following warning lamps light up when the quantity of AdBlue® is lower than the reserve level corresponding to a range of 1,500 miles (2,400 km).

Together with the warning lamps, messages regularly remind you of the need to top up to avoid engine starting being prevented. Refer to the **Warning and indicator lamps** section for details of the messages displayed.

i For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

With 1.6 BlueHDi (Euro 6.1)

Warning/indicator lamps lit	Action	Remaining range
	Top up as soon as possible.	Between 1,500 miles and 370 miles (2,400 km and 600 km)
	A top-up is vital , there is the risk that the engine will be prevented from starting.	Between 370 miles and 0 miles (600 km and 0 km)
	To be able to restart the engine, add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.	0 miles (km)

With 1.5 BlueHDi (Euro 6.2 / 6.3) engines

Warning/ indicator lamps lit	Action	Remaining range
	Top up.	Between 1,500 miles and 500 miles (2,400 km and 800 km)
	Top up as soon as possible.	Between 500 miles and 62 miles (800 km and 100 km)
 	A top-up is vital , there is the risk that the engine will be prevented from starting.	Between 62 miles and 0 miles (100 km and 0 km)
 	To be able to restart the engine, add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.	0 miles (km)

Malfunction of the SCR emissions control system

Malfunction detection

  	If a malfunction is detected, these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and an "Emissions fault" message.
---	---

The alert is triggered while driving, when the fault is detected for the first time, and thereafter when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the cause of the fault persists.

 If the fault is temporary, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

Malfunction confirmed during the permitted driving phase (between 685 miles and 0 miles (1,100 km and 0 km))

If the fault indication is still displayed permanently after 31 miles (50 km) of driving, the fault in the SCR system is confirmed. The AdBlue warning lamp flashes, and an "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in X miles" or "NO START IN X miles" message is displayed, indicating the driving range in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds. The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.

You can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the **engine immobiliser** system is triggered.

 Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Starting prevented

Whenever the ignition is switched on, the "Emissions fault: Starting prevented" or "NO START IN" message is displayed.

 To be able to restart the engine, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Total distance recorder

The total distance recorder measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its initial registration.

With the ignition on, the total distance is displayed at all times. It remains displayed for 30 seconds after switching off the ignition. It is displayed when the driver's door is opened, and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

 When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units (km or miles):

the road speed must be displayed in the local country's official unit (km/h or mph). The unit is changed via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

Total distance recorder

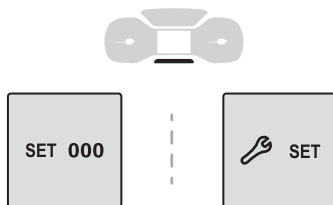


It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

Trip distance recorder

This measures the distance travelled since it was last reset by the driver.

Resetting the trip recorder



► With the ignition on, press the button until dashes appear.

Equipment configuration for vehicles without screen

If your vehicle does not have an audio system or a touch screen, you can still configure some equipment by using the **LCD text instrument panel** display.

Control buttons

A long press of this button takes you to the configuration menu, a short press confirms.

– ✱ + ✱ Pressing one of these buttons lets you move in a menu, a list; change a value.

↩ ✱ Pressing this button takes you back up a level or cancels the current operation.

Display screen menus

LIGHTING

- DAYTIME LAMPS,
- AUTO HEADLAMPS (Automatic headlamp dipping),
- GUIDE LAMPS (Guide-me-home lighting),
- WELCOME LAMPS (Welcome lighting).

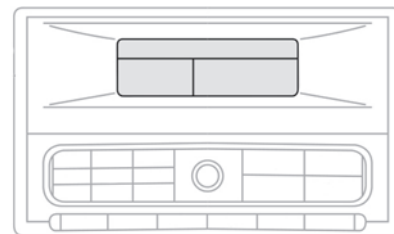
DRIVE ASSIST

- TYRE PRESSURES (Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system),
- VIGILANCE ALT (Driver attention detection),
- ADVISED SPEED (Speed limit recognition),
- COLLISION ALT (Collision risk alert),
- PARKING (Parking sensors).

For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

Monochrome screen C

Displays on the screen

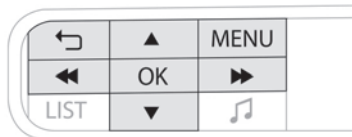


This displays the following information:

- Time.

- Date.
- Outside temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice).
- Parking sensor information graphic
- Current audio source playing.
- Telephone or hands-free kit information.
- Alert messages.
- Settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

Controls



On the audio system control panel, use the following buttons:

MENU Access the **main menu**

▲ or ▼ Scroll through the items on the screen

◀ or ▶ Change a setting value

OK Validate

Back Abandon the current operation

Main menu



► Press the **MENU** button for access to the **main menu**:

- "Multimedia".
- "Telephone".
- "Trip computer".
- "Connections".
- "Personalisation-configuration".

► Press the "◀" or "▶" button to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the **"OK"** button.

"Multimedia" menu



With the audio system on, this menu allows you to activate or deactivate radio functions (RDS, DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display) or set the media play mode (Normal, Random, Random all, Repeat).

For more information about the "Multimedia" application, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

"Telephone" menu



With the audio system on, this menu allows you to make a call or view the various telephone directories.

For more information about the "Telephone" application, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

"Trip computer" menu



This menu allows you to consult information concerning the status of the vehicle.

Warning log

It displays an onscreen summary of the function alert messages.

"Connections" menu



With the audio system on, this menu allows a Bluetooth device (telephone, media player) to be paired and the connection mode to be defined (hands-free kit, playing of audio files). For more information about the "Connections" application, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

"Personalisation-configuration" menu



This menu gives access to the following functions:

- "Define the vehicle parameters".
- "Display configuration".

Define the vehicle parameters

This menu allows the following equipment to be activated / deactivated, depending on the version and/or country of sale:

Vehicle lighting

- "Daytime lights".

Interior lighting

- "Follow-me-home headlamps".
- "Welcome lighting".

Comfort

- "Tyre inflation".
- "Fatigue Detection System".
- "Parking assistance".

Driving assistance

- "Speed recommendation".
- "Blind spot monitoring".

For more information on the different equipment, refer to the corresponding sections.

Display configuration

This menu allows you to change the language used by the display from a defined list. This menu gives access to the following settings:

- "Choice of units".
- "Date and time adjustment".
- "Display personalisation".
- "Choice of language".

! As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations that require sustained attention when stationary.

Touch screen

The touch screen gives access to:

- The heating/air conditioning controls.
 - The menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems.
 - The audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information.
- And, depending on equipment, allows:
- The display of alert messages and the visual parking sensors information.
 - The permanent display of the time and the outside temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice).
 - Access to the internet services and navigation system controls and the display of associated information.

! As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations that require sustained attention with the vehicle stationary.
Some functions are not accessible when driving.

General operation

Recommendations

This screen is of the capacitive type.

- Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
- Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.

- Use a soft, clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Principles

- Use the buttons arranged below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons on the touch screen. Some menus may display across two pages: press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the second page.

i After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.

To deactivate/activate a function, select **"OFF"** or **"ON"**.

-  Settings for a function
-  Access to additional information on the function
- OK** Confirm
-  Return to the previous page or confirm

Menus



Radio Media.

See "Audio equipment and telematics" section..



Mirror Screen or Connected navigation (depending on equipment).

See "Audio equipment and telematics" section..



Air conditioning.

Allows adjustment of the various settings for temperature, air flow, etc.

For more information on **Heating, Manual air conditioning** and **Automatic air conditioning**, please refer to the corresponding sections.



Telephone.

See "Audio equipment and telematics" section..



Applications.

Allows the display of the connected services available.

See "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Vehicle or Driving (depending on equipment).

Allows the activation, deactivation and adjustment of settings for certain functions.

The functions accessible from this menu are arranged under two tabs: "**Vehicle settings**" and "**Driving functions**".



Volume control / mute.

See "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Press with three fingers on the touch screen to access the menu carousel.

Upper bar

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:

- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and access to a simplified menu (temperature and air flow adjustment only).
- Reminder of information from the **RadioMedia** and **Telephone** menus and navigation instructions (depending on equipment).
- Notification zone (SMS and E-mail) (depending on equipment).
- Access to the **Settings**.



Trip computer

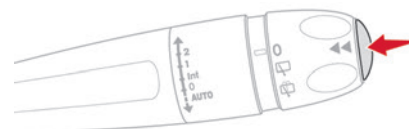
Information displayed about the current journey (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

Information display

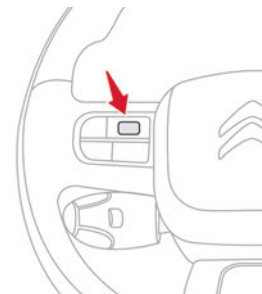
Details are displayed successively.

- Trip mileage.

- Range.
- Current fuel consumption.
- Average speed.
- Stop & Start time counter.
- Information from the speed limit recognition system.



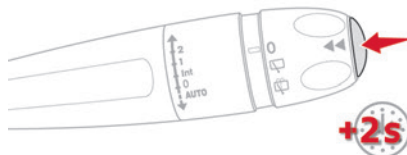
► Press the button located on the end of the wiper control stalk.



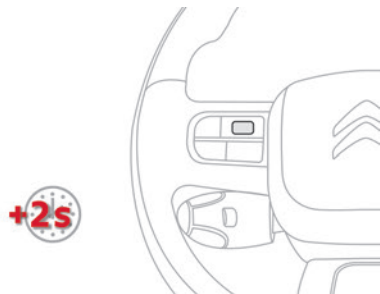
► Or press the thumbwheel on the steering wheel.

Trip reset

The reset is performed when the trip counter is displayed.



► Press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** for more than two seconds.



► Press the thumbwheel on the **steering wheel** for more than two seconds.



► Press this button for more than 2 seconds.

A few definitions...

Range

(miles or km)

 The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (at the average fuel consumption seen over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

i This value may fluctuate if a change of driving style or terrain results in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

Dashes are displayed when the range falls below approximately 20 miles (30 km).

After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds approximately 60 miles (100 km).

! If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits,

contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

 Calculated over the last few seconds.

i This function is only displayed from approximately 20 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

 Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)

 Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)

 Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter

(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)

A time counter calculates the total of the periods in STOP mode during a journey.

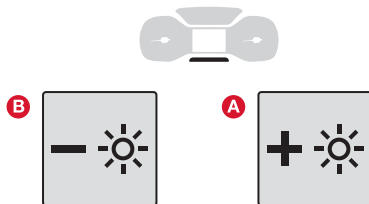
It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Lighting dimmer

Allows manual adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel and touch screen according to the outside lighting.

Only works when the vehicle lamps are on (except daytime running lamps) and in night mode.

Two buttons



With the lamps on, press button **A** to increase the brightness of the lighting, or button **B** to decrease it.

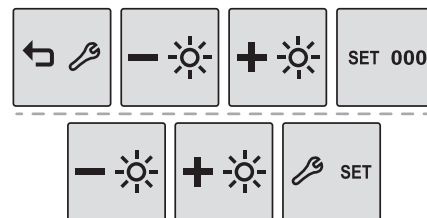
Release the button when the desired brightness is reached.

Touch screen



- In the **Settings** menu, select "**Brightness**".
- Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

i The brightness can be set differently for day mode (lighting control stalk in position "0") and night mode (lighting control stalk in any other position).



You can adjust the date and time in the instrument panel display.

SET 000 — Hold this button down.



SET

+ — Press one of these buttons to select the setting to be changed.



— Press this button briefly to confirm.



SET

+ — Press one of these buttons to change the setting and confirm again to register the change.

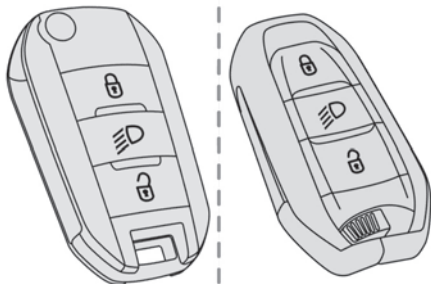
Setting the date and time

Without audio system



Remote control / Key

Remote control function



The remote control can be used for the following remote functions, depending on version:

- Unlocking / Locking / Deadlocking the vehicle.
- Opening the fuel tank cap.
- Remote operation of lighting.
- Activating / Deactivating the alarm.
- Locating the vehicle.
- Activating the vehicle's electronic immobiliser.

The remote control includes a conventional key that allows the central unlocking / locking of the vehicle using the door lock, as well as starting and switching off the engine.

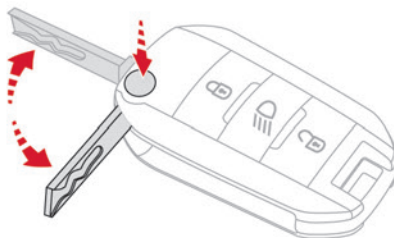
Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked / unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, the central locking, the battery, etc. For more information on the **Back-up procedures**, please refer to the corresponding section.

Integral key

The key built into the remote control can be used for the following operations, depending on version:

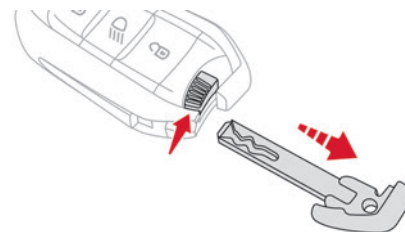
- Unlocking/Locking/Deadlocking the vehicle.
- Activation/Deactivation of the manual child lock.
- Activation/Deactivation of the front passenger airbag.
- Back-up Unlocking/Locking of the doors.
- Switching on the ignition and starting/switching off the engine.

Without Keyless Entry and Starting



- To unfold or fold the key, press the button.

With Keyless Entry and Starting



- To eject the key or put it back in place, pull and hold the button.

Unlocking the vehicle



- Press this button to unlock the vehicle.

When the unlocking button is pressed, the flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- The unlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm.
- The deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking



- Press this button.

When the locking button is pressed, the lighting of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- The locking of the vehicle for versions without alarm.

- The activation of the alarm for other versions.

i If one of the doors or the boot is not fully closed, the locking does not take place.

However, if the vehicle is equipped with the alarm, it is fully activated after about 45 seconds.

If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and there is then no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the alarm was activated beforehand, the alarm is reactivated automatically.

Deadlocking

► Press the locking button again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators for versions without alarm).

! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the central locking button.

The horn remains operational.

Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Locating the vehicle

This function helps you to spot your vehicle from a distance, with the vehicle locked:

- The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps come on for 30 seconds.



► Press this button.

Pressing again before the end of the timed period switches off the lamps immediately.

Advice



Remote control

The remote control is a sensitive, high-frequency device; avoid handling it in your pocket, due to the risk of unintentionally unlocking the vehicle.

Avoid pressing the remote control buttons while out of range of the vehicle, due to the risk of rendering the remote control inoperative. It would then be necessary to reset it.

The remote control does not work when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off.



Anti-theft protection

Do not modify the electronic vehicle immobiliser, as this might result in malfunctions.



Locking the vehicle

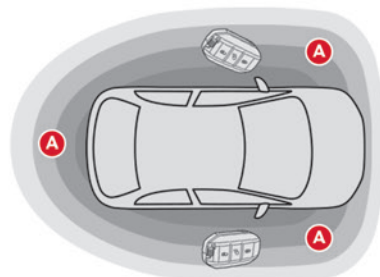
Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.



Purchasing a second-hand vehicle

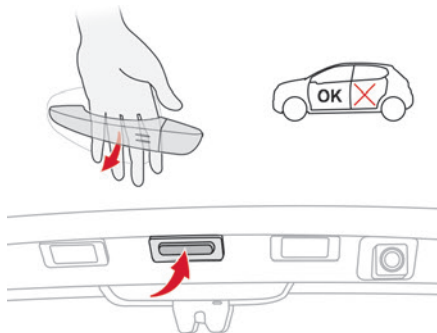
Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones able to start the vehicle.

Keyless Entry and Starting



This system allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle, while carrying the electronic key on your person in the recognition zone **A**.

Unlocking the vehicle



► With the electronic key on your person in recognition zone A, pass your hand behind the door handle of one of the front doors, or press the tailgate opening control.

- i** The flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:
 - the unlocking of the vehicle for versions without alarm.
 - the deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking



► With the electronic key in the recognition zone, press with a finger or thumb on one of the front door handles (at the markings) to lock the vehicle.

It is not possible to lock the vehicle if one of the keys is left inside the vehicle.

- i** The illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:
 - locking of the vehicle for versions without alarm;
 - activation of the alarm for other versions.

! For safety and theft protection reasons, never leave the electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it. It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

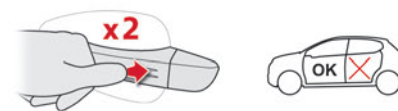
! Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt, etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection. If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore

detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the central locking button. The horn remains operational. Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



► With the electronic key in recognition zone A, press your finger or thumb on the handle of one of the front doors (at the markings) to lock the vehicle.

► Within five seconds, press the front door handle again to deadlock the vehicle.

- i** If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless

Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, central locking will be disabled. However, if the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds.

i If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or boot are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will also be reactivated automatically.

! As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle, even for a short time, without taking the Keyless Entry and Starting system's electronic key with you. Be aware of the risk of theft of the vehicle if the key is present in one of the defined areas while the vehicle is unlocked.

! To preserve the battery charge in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are set to hibernation mode after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader. For more information on starting with the **Keyless Entry and Starting** system, refer to the corresponding section.

i Electrical interference

The electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone (switched on or on standby), laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, etc.

Back-up procedures

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, a personal identification document and, if possible, the label bearing the key code.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

Use this procedure in the following situations:

- Remote control battery discharged.
- Remote control malfunction.
- Vehicle battery discharged.
- Vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, change the remote control battery.

In the second case, reinitialise the remote control.

Refer to the corresponding sections.

- Insert the key in the door lock.
- Turn the key towards the front/rear to unlock/lock the vehicle.
- Turn the key rearwards again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

i If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will not be activated when locking with the key.

If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds when the door is opened; switch on the ignition to stop it.

Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:

- Central locking malfunction.
- Battery disconnected or discharged.

! In the event of a malfunction of the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

Driver's door

- Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it, or towards the front to unlock it.

Passenger doors

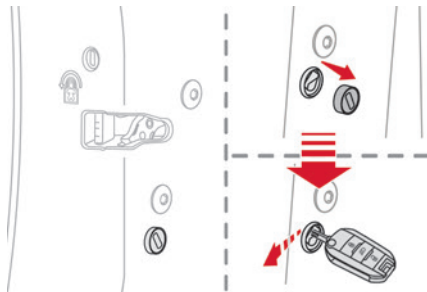
Unlocking

- Pull the interior door opening control.

Locking

- Open the doors.
- For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

Refer to the corresponding section.

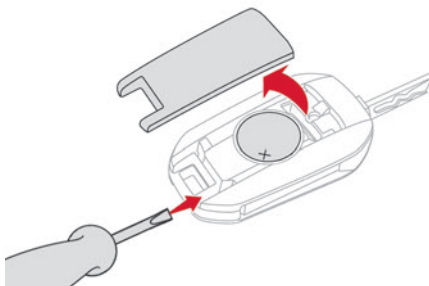


- **Remove the black cap**, located on the edge of the door, using the key.
- Insert the key into the socket without forcing it, then turn the latch towards the inside of the door.
- Remove the key and refit the black cap.
- Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

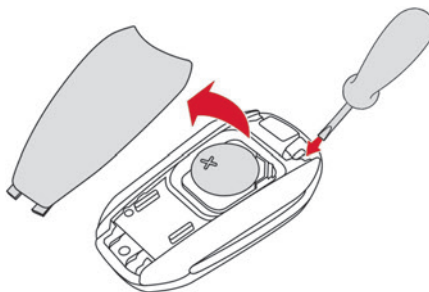
Changing the battery

A message is displayed on the instrument panel when the battery needs changing.

Without Keyless Entry and Starting
Battery type: CR2032 / 3 volts.



With Keyless Entry and Starting
Battery type: CR2032 / 3 volts.



- Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and raise the cover.
- Remove the discharged battery from its housing.
- Insert the new battery, observing the polarity, and clip the cover onto the housing.
- Reinitialise the remote control.

For more information on **Reinitialising the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

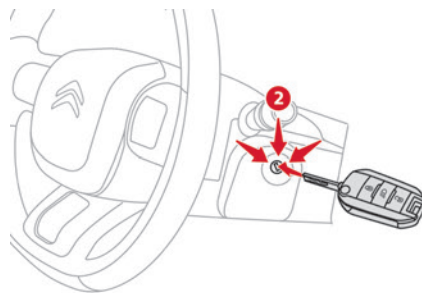


Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

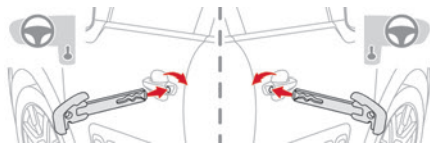
Without Keyless Entry and Starting



- Switch off the ignition.
- Return the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.

- Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch.
The remote control is now fully operational again.

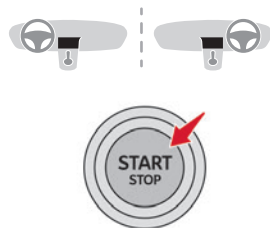
With Keyless Entry and Starting



- Insert the mechanical key (incorporated into the remote control) into the lock to open the vehicle.



- Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.



- Switch on the ignition by pressing the **"START/STOP"** button.
 - **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
 - **With an automatic gearbox**, while in mode **P**, depress the brake pedal.
- If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Doors

Opening

From outside

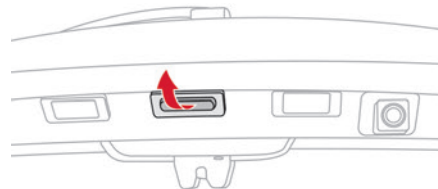
- After unlocking the vehicle or with the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

From inside

- Pull the interior opening control of a door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

Boot

Opening



- With the vehicle unlocked or with the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key in the recognition zone, press the central tailgate control.
- Lift the tailgate.

Closing

- Lower the tailgate using one of the interior grab handles.

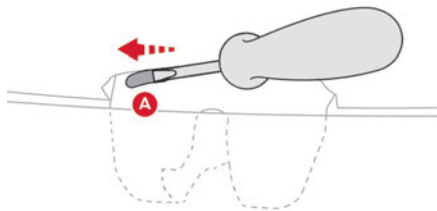
! In the event of a malfunction or if you experience difficulty opening or closing the tailgate, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid the issue deteriorating and prevent any risk of the tailgate dropping, potentially causing serious injury.

Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

Unlocking

- Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.



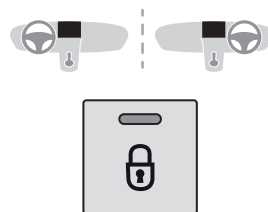
- Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the boot.
- Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

- i** In the event of a fault with the central locking system, it is essential to disconnect the battery to lock the boot and so ensure complete locking of the vehicle.

Central locking



Manual

- Press this button to lock/unlock the vehicle (doors and boot) from inside the vehicle. The indicator lamp comes on to confirm the central locking of the vehicle.

- !** The central locking does not take place if one of the doors is open.

i When locking/deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the indicator lamp flashes and the button is inoperative.

- After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
- After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control, Keyless Entry and Starting or the integral key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic (anti-intrusion security)

The doors and boot lock automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)). To deactivate/reactivate this function (activated by default):

- Press the button until an audible warning is triggered and a confirmation message appears.

i Transporting long or voluminous objects

Press the central locking control to drive with the boot open and the doors locked. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and an alert will appear. Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle. Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

Alarm

(Depending on the country of sale.)

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following type of monitoring:

Perimeter monitoring

The system checks the opening of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet, etc.

Self-protection function

The system checks for the disconnection of any of its components.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, central control unit or the siren wiring is put out of service or damaged.

! For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with alarm system

Activation

- Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
- Lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The monitoring system is active. The locking button's indicator lamp, located on the dashboard, flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

i Following an instruction to lock the vehicle, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds. If an opening (door, boot, etc.) is not fully closed, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds.

Deactivation

- Unlock the vehicle with the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

i When the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is also reactivated.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.

The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times consecutively.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system, rapid flashing of the locking button indicator lamp informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
- open the door; the alarm is triggered,

- switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the button's indicator lamp goes off.

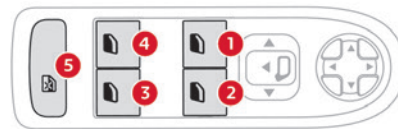
Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, and for 10 seconds afterwards, the flashing locking button indicates a system fault. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric windows



1. Left-hand front
2. Right-hand front
3. Right-hand rear
4. Left-hand rear
5. Deactivation of the electric window controls located by the rear seats

Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch, without going past the point of resistance. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation (depending on version)

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch, beyond the point of resistance: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

i The electric window switches remain operational for approximately one minute after the key has been removed. Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Safety anti-pinch (depending on version)

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again. In the event of unwanted opening of the window when closing automatically, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes. Continue to hold the switch for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not active during this operation.

Deactivating the rear controls for the rear electric windows



For your children's safety, press control 5 to deactivate the controls for the rear electric windows, irrespective of their positions. The red indicator lamp in the button comes on and a confirmation message is displayed. The lamp will remain lit until the controls are reactivated. The rear electric windows can still be controlled using the driver's controls.

Reinitialising the electric windows

After reconnecting the battery, or in the event of abnormal window movement, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialised.

The anti-pinch function is disabled during the following sequence of operations.

For each window:

► Lower the window fully, then raise it; it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the

control is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed.

► Continue to pull the control upwards for at least one second after the window reaches the closed position.

! If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed. To do this, press the relevant switch.

When the driver operates the passengers' electric window switches, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly.

It is important to ensure that passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Pay particular attention to children when operating windows.

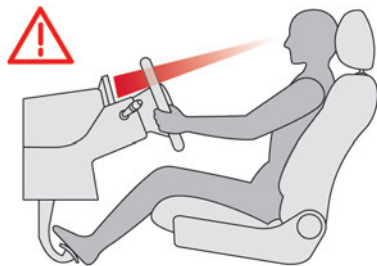
Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing windows using the key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Correct driving position

! For safety reasons, adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

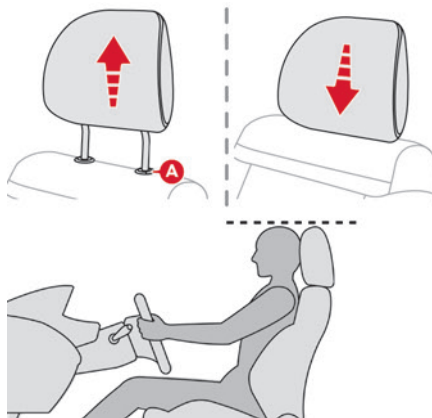
- head restraint height.
- seat backrest angle.
- seat cushion height.
- longitudinal seat position.
- steering wheel height.
- rear view mirror and door mirrors.



! Once these adjustments have been made, check that the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

Front head restraints

Height adjustment



- **Upward:** pull the head restraint up to the desired position; the head restraint can be felt to click into position.
- **Downward:** press lug **A** to lower the head restraint.

i The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

Removing a head restraint

- Pull the head restraint fully up.

- Press lug **A** to release the head restraint and raise it fully.
- Stow the head restraint securely.

Refitting a head restraint

- Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest.
- Push the head restraint down as far as it will go.
- Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.
- Adjust the height of the head restraint.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

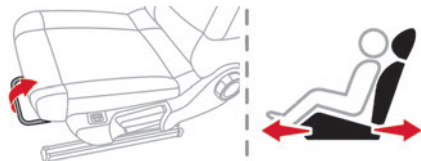
Front seats

! For safety reasons, seat adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

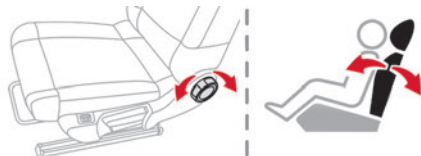
Adjustments

Forwards-backwards



- Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
- Release the bar to lock the seat in position on one of the notches.

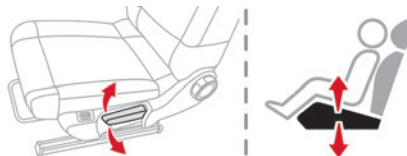
Backrest angle



- Turn the knob to adjust the backrest.

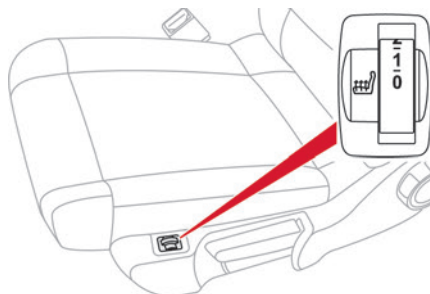
Height

(driver only)



- Pull the control upwards to raise the seat or push it downwards to lower the seat, until the position required is obtained.

Heated seats



- With the engine running, use the adjustment knob to switch on and select the level of heating required:
- 0** : Off.

- 1 : Low.
- 2 : Medium.
- 3 : High.

The front seats can be heated individually.



Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.

Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.

When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electricity consumption in turn decreases fuel consumption.



Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin.

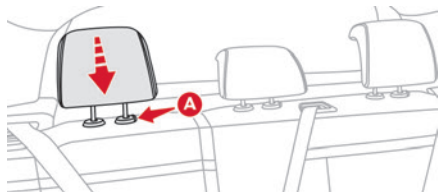
There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).

To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:

- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
- Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
- Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
- Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.

Rear bench seat

Rear head restraints



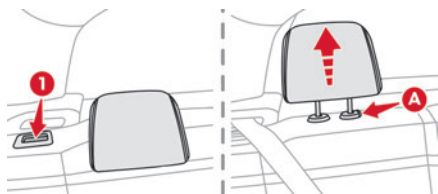
They have two positions:

- ▶ A **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
 - ▶ Pull the head restraint fully up.
- ▶ A **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:

- ▶ Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.

The rear head restraints can be removed.

Removing a head restraint



- ▶ Release the backrest using control **1**.
- ▶ Tilt the backrest slightly forwards.
- ▶ Pull the head restraint fully up.
- ▶ Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.

Refitting a head restraint

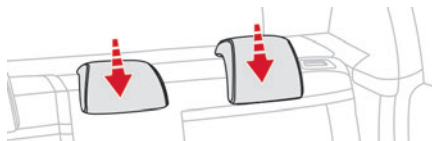
- ▶ Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest.
- ▶ Push the head restraint down as far as it will go.
- ▶ Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.

! Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; the head restraints should be in place and in the high position. The head restraint for the centre seat and those for the outer seats are not interchangeable.

Folding the backrests

! Manoeuvring the seat backrests should only be done when the vehicle is stationary.

First steps:



- ▶ Lower the head restraints.
- ▶ If necessary, move the front seats forward.

- ▶ Check that no person or object will interfere with folding down the backrests (clothing, luggage, etc.).
- ▶ Check that the outer seat belts are lying flat on the backrests.

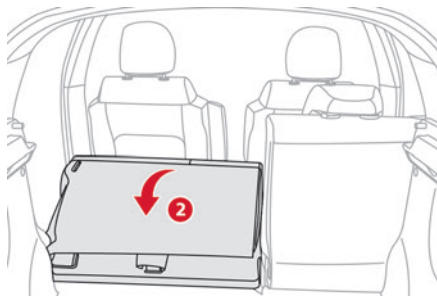


- ▶ Press the backrest release grip **1**.
- ▶ Guide backrest **2** down to the horizontal position.

i When the backrest is released, the red indicator is visible in the release grip.

Repositioning the backrests

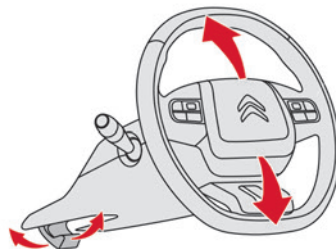
! First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.



- Put the backrest **2** in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
- Check that the red indicator is no longer visible in the release grip **1**.
- Ensure that the outer seat belts were not trapped during the operation.

! Please note: an incorrectly latched backrest compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an accident.
The contents of the boot may be thrown forward - risk of serious injury!

Steering wheel adjustment



- When stationary, pull the control to release the steering wheel.
- Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- Push the control lever to lock the steering wheel.

! As a safety measure, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking.

They can also be folded in for parking in narrow spaces.

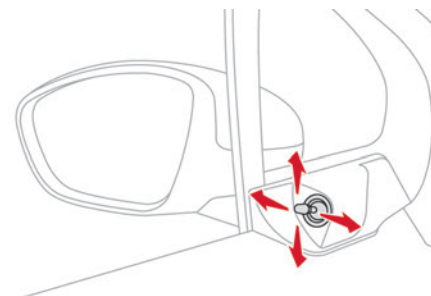
Demisting/Defrosting



If the vehicle is so equipped, demisting/defrosting of the heated door mirrors is performed when the heated rear screen is switched on.

For more information on **Rear screen demisting/defrosting**, refer to the corresponding section.

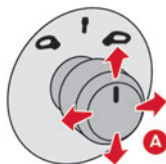
Manual adjustment



- Move the lever in any of the 4 directions to correctly position the mirror glass.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spots".
The objects that you see in the mirrors are in fact closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Electric adjustment



- Turn control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- Move the control in any of the four directions to adjust.
- Return the control to the central position.

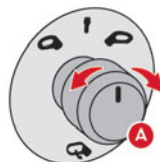
Manual folding

The mirrors can be folded manually (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.).

- Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

Electric folding

If the vehicle is so equipped, the mirrors can be folded electrically from the inside, with the vehicle parked and the ignition on:



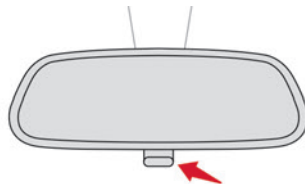
- Move the control **A** down.

Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlights of other vehicles, etc.

Manual model

Day/night position

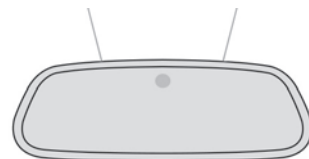


- Pull the lever to change to the anti-dazzle "night" position.
- Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Adjustment

- Set the mirror to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model



This system automatically and progressively transitions between day and night modes, using a sensor that measures the light entering from the rear of the vehicle.

i To ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Ventilation

Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the exterior, via the grille located at the base of the windscreen, or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

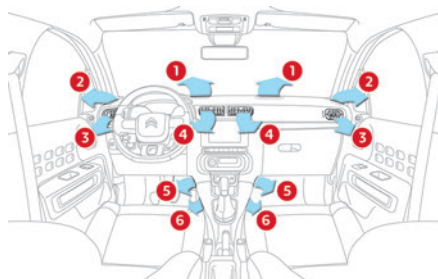
Controls

Depending on version, the controls are accessible in the **"Air conditioning"** touch screen menu or are grouped together in the control panel on the centre console.

The demisting/defrosting controls for the windscreen and the rear screen are located

below the touch screen, or on the centre console panel located below the audio system.

Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents
3. Adjustable and closable side air vents
4. Adjustable and closable central air vents
5. Air outlets to the front footwells
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells

Advice

Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

- To ensure that air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor located on the dashboard; this sensor is used to

regulate the automatic air conditioning system.

- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.

- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power, enhancing the towing capacity.



Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of interior air recirculation. Risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!



If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments. Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.



Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water underneath the vehicle. This is perfectly normal.

Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

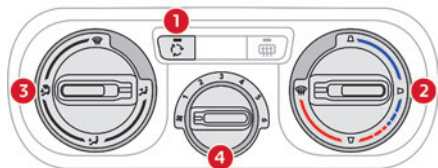
We recommend using a composite passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, this type of filter helps to purify the air breathed by the occupants and keep the passenger compartment clean (by reducing allergic symptoms, unpleasant odours and greasy deposits).

- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.

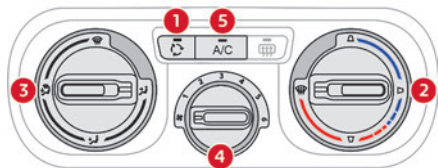
Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only operate when the engine is running. Temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment. For more information on the **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Heating/Manual air conditioning



The heating only operates when the engine is running.



The manual air conditioning operates when the engine is running.

1. Recirculation of interior air
2. Temperature adjustment
3. Air distribution adjustment
4. Air flow adjustment
5. Air conditioning on/off

Adjusting the temperature

- Turn the knob **2** from blue (cold) to red (hot).

Adjusting the air flow

- Turn the knob **4** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

Adjusting the air flow



Central and side air vents.



Footwells.



Windscreen and footwells.



Windscreen.

i The distribution of the air can be adjusted by placing the control in an intermediate position.

Air intake/Air recirculation

The recirculation of interior air function isolates the passenger compartment from outside fumes and odours, and enables the air inside the passenger compartment to be heated or cooled more quickly.

- Press button **1** to choose the passenger compartment air intake mode.

When the indicator lamp is off, the exterior air intake function is activated.

When the indicator lamp is on, the air recirculation function is activated; the intake of exterior air is inhibited.

Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

- Press button **5** to turn the air conditioning on/off.

i The air conditioning cannot operate when the air flow adjustment is set to OFF.

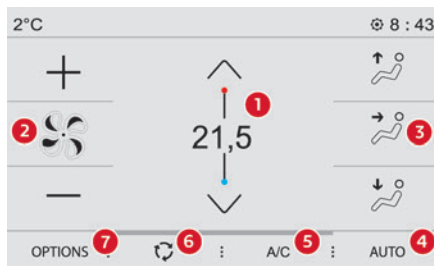
Automatic air conditioning

The air conditioning operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls can be accessed with the ignition on.

Operation of the air conditioning and regulation of temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are automatic.



- Press the **Climate** menu button to access the system controls.



1. Temperature adjustment
2. Air flow adjustment
3. Air distribution adjustment
4. Automatic comfort programme on/off
5. Air conditioning on/off
6. Air intake/Air recirculation
7. Access to the secondary page

Temperature adjustment

► Press one of the buttons **1** to increase (red) or decrease (blue) the value.

The value displayed corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

Automatic comfort programme

Activation/Deactivation

► Press button **4** to activate or deactivate the air conditioning system's automatic mode.

The air conditioning system operates automatically: the system optimises the

temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment based on the comfort level selected.

Automatic programme mode setting

► Go to the secondary page by pressing button **7** to adjust the automatic comfort programme by choosing one of the available settings.

"Soft": provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.

"Normal": offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).

"Fast": provides strong and effective air flow.

► To change the settings, press the  button several times:

The setting is associated with AUTO mode only. However, when AUTO mode is deactivated, the previous selection is retained.

Changing the setting does not reactivate AUTO mode if this was deactivated.

i In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment.

On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed to reach the required level of comfort more quickly.

The system automatically corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Manual control

The air flow and air distribution can be adjusted manually.

The automatic comfort programme is deactivated if a setting is changed.

► Press button **4** to activate the automatic comfort programme again.

Air flow adjustment

► Press one of the buttons **2** (- or +) to increase or decrease air flow.

The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in according to the request.

When the air flow is reduced to a minimum, ventilation stops.

"OFF" is displayed alongside the fan.

Adjusting the air distribution

► Press the buttons **3** to adjust the air flow distribution inside the passenger compartment.

 Windscreen.

 Central and side air vents.

 Footwells.

Each press on a button activates or deactivates the function.

i All three buttons can be activated simultaneously. In this case, priority is given to the air flows from the central and side air vents, and from those in the passenger footwells.

Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

► Press button **5** to turn the air conditioning on/off.

i The air conditioning cannot operate when the air flow adjustment is set to OFF.

Recirculation of interior air

The intake of exterior air helps avoid and eliminate misting of the windscreen and side windows.

Recirculating the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.

i When required, this function also allows faster heating or cooling of the air in the passenger compartment.

► Press button **6** to recirculate the interior air or allow the intake of exterior air.

! Avoid prolonged use of interior air recirculation (due to the risk of misting and deteriorating air quality).

Ventilation function with the ignition on

When the ignition is switched on, you can use the ventilation system to adjust the **air flow** settings and the **air distribution** in the passenger compartment for a duration which depends on the battery charge.

This function does not operate the air conditioning.

Front demist - defrost



These markings on the control panels indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

During the winter period, direct the side air vents towards the side windows to optimise their demisting and defrosting.

With control panel on the centre console

On/Off

► To switch the system on, set the temperature and air flow controls to the corresponding marked position. Then set the air distribution control to the “Windscreen” position.

► To switch the system off, set the air flow control to the **fan** position.

With touch screen

On/Off



► To switch the system on, press this button.

The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

► Press this button again to switch it off. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting - defrosting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

Rear screen demist - defrost

On/Off



► To switch the system on, press this button to defrost the rear screen and, depending on version, the door mirrors. The indicator lamp in the button comes on. Defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

► To stop the defrosting operation before it automatically turns off, press this button again. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

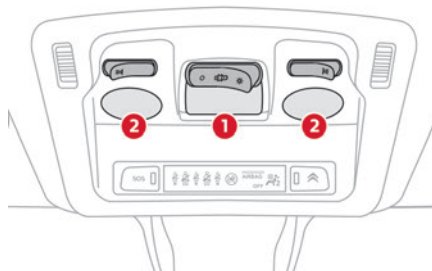


Switch off the defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as it is no longer needed, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.



Rear screen demisting - defrosting can only be operated when the engine is running.

Courtesy lamp



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Front map reading lamps

Front courtesy lamp



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked.
- when the key is removed from the ignition switch.
- when a door is opened.
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate the vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked.
- when the ignition is switched on.
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.

In "Permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- With the ignition off, approximately 10 minutes.
- In energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.
- With the engine running, unlimited.

Map reading lamps



► With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

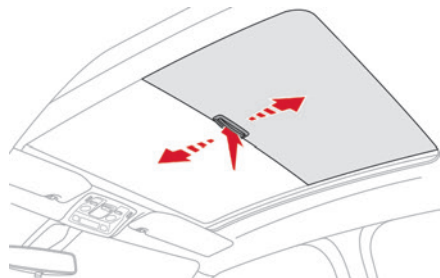


Take care not to place anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Panoramic glass sunroof

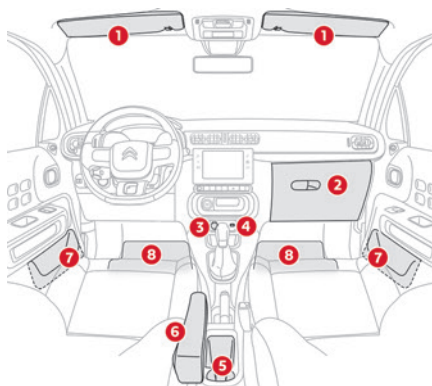
It has a tinted glass panoramic surface to increase brightness and vision inside the vehicle. It is equipped with a manual blind which helps to maintain a comfortable temperature and reduce the noise.

Opening/closing the blind



► To open/close the blind, take it by its handle and pull it backwards/forwards until it locks into place.

Interior fittings



1. Sun visor
2. Glove box
3. 12 V accessory socket (max. 120 W).
4. USB socket
5. Open storage with double cup holder
6. Front armrest (depending on version)
7. Storage trays
8. Mat (depending on version)

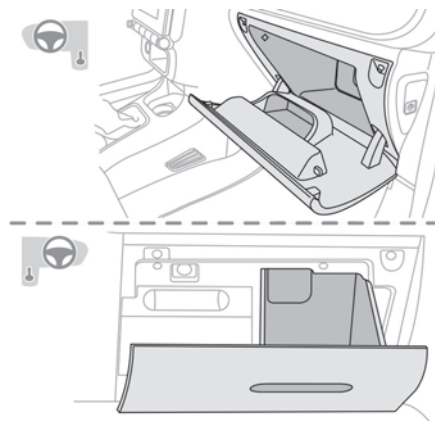
Sun visor

The driver's sun visor is fitted with a vanity mirror with concealing flap and a card holder (or ticket holder).

! Do not fix or attach anything to the sun visor on the passenger side, as this could

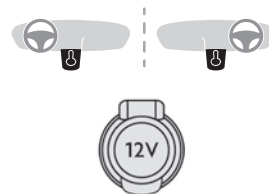
cause injuries if the front airbag (fitted in the roof) were deployed.

Glove box



It can be used to hold a water bottle, the vehicle's handbook pack, etc.

12 V accessory socket

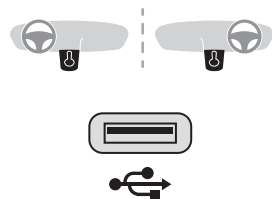


► To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 W), lift the cover and plug in a suitable adaptor.

! Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB socket

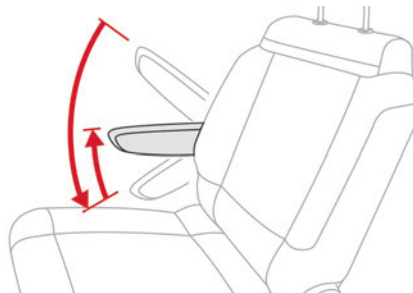


It plays the audio files which are sent to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers.

These files can be managed using the steering mounted controls or those on the touch screen.

Front armrest

Adjusting the height



- Fully lower the armrest.
- Raise it to the desired position (low, intermediate or high).
- Once it is in the high position, raise it to unlock it and move it to the low position.

Clothes hooks



They are located above each rear door.

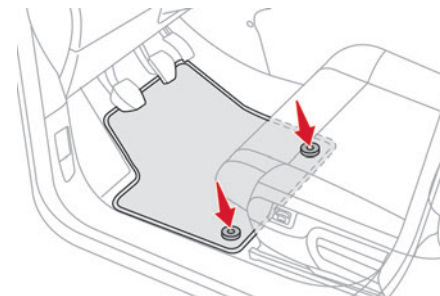
Mats

Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fasteners supplied in the enclosed sachet.

The other mats are simply laid over the carpet.

Removing/refitting



- To remove it on the driver's side, move the seat backwards and unclip the fasteners.
- To refit it, position the mat and secure it by pressing.
- Check that the mat is secured correctly.

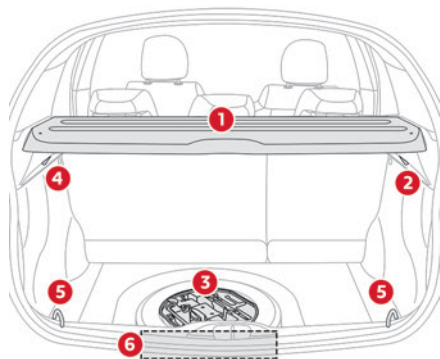
! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Only use mats which are suitable for the fasteners already present in the vehicle; these fasteners must be used.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

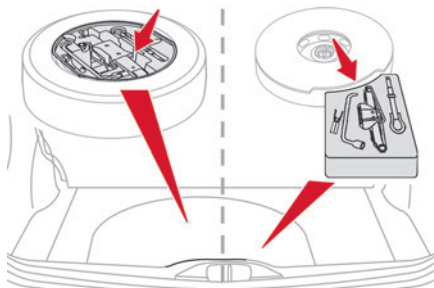
The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

Boot fittings



1. Rear shelf
2. Hooks
3. Storage box
4. Lighting
5. Stowing rings
6. Warning triangle

Storage well



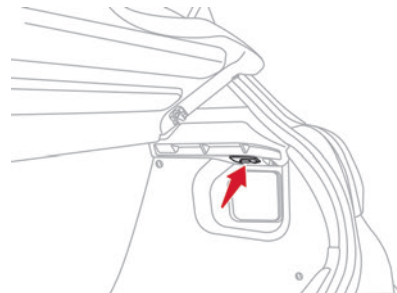
► Fully raise the boot carpet to access the storage well.

Depending on version, it includes:

- A towing ring.
- A hazard warning triangle.
- A temporary puncture repair kit with the tool kit.

! On versions with a storage well, the storage well must be put back in place before loading the boot.

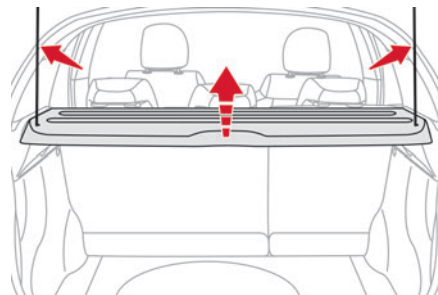
Hooks



They are used to hang shopping bags.

! Take care to only hang lightweight bags.

Rear shelf



To remove the shelf:

► Unhook the 2 cords.

- Gently raise the shelf, then remove it.

There are several ways of storing it:

- Either upright behind the front seats.
- Or flat on the bottom of the boot.

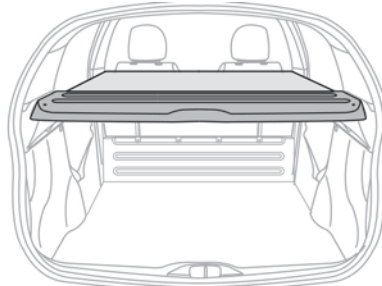
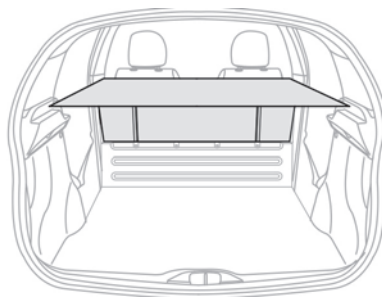
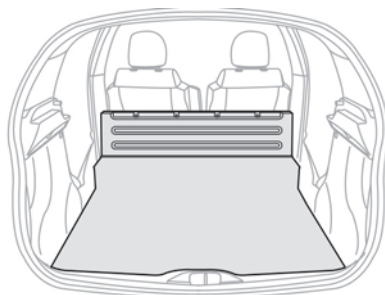
Boot lamp

It comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

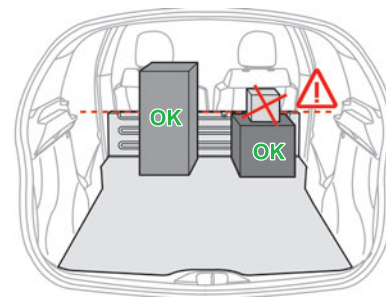
The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- when the ignition is off, approximately 10 minutes.
- in energy economy mode, approximately 30 seconds.
- with the engine running, unlimited.

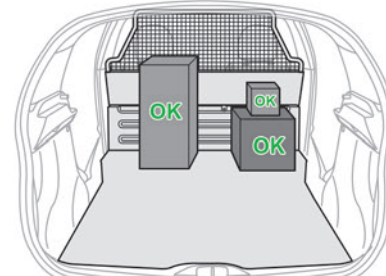
Rear shelf (commercial version)



This conceals the interior of the vehicle in combination with the existing shelf.



! Do not place objects above the load stop.



If your vehicle is fitted with a protective grille, you can place objects above the load stop.



Do not place hard or heavy objects on the rear shelf.

They can become dangerous projectiles in the event of sudden braking or impact.

To access the spare wheel on van versions:

- ▶ Remove the tray.
- ▶ Raise the hinged floor.
- ▶ Remove the chock.

Lighting control

! Never look too closely at the luminous beam of LED lamps: risk of serious eye injury!

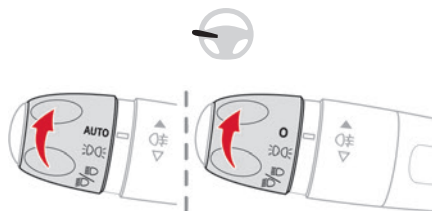
i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

i **Travelling abroad**
Vehicles equipped with halogen headlamps:

If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamp dipped beams must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i If one or more lamps fails, a message asks you to check the lamp or lamps concerned.

Main lighting



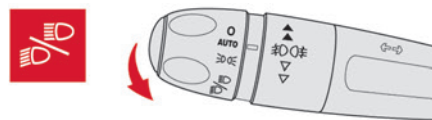
○ Lamps off/daytime running lamps

⊞ Sidelamps only

⊞ Dipped or main beam headlamps

AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps.

Headlamp dipping



► Pull the stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In the lighting off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by pulling the stalk.

Display

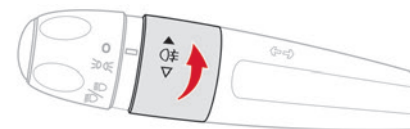
Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

Foglamp selection ring

The foglamps operate with the dipped and main beam headlamps.

Rear foglamp

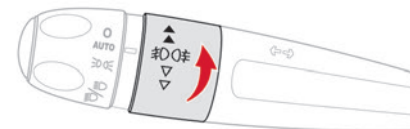
⬆ It only works if the sidelamps are on.



► Rotate the ring forwards to switch it on and backwards to switch it off.

When the lighting is switched off automatically (version with AUTO lighting), the foglamp and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.

Front foglamps and rear foglamp





► Press and rotate the ring:

- forwards a 1st time to switch on the front foglamps.
- forwards a 2nd time to switch on the rear foglamp.
- backwards a 1st time to switch off the rear foglamp.
- backwards a 2nd time to switch off the front foglamps.

When the lamps are switched off automatically (with AUTO model) or when the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

► Rotate the ring backwards to switch the foglamps off; the sidelamps will then switch off.



Switching on the foglamps is prohibited in clear weather or in rain, both day and night. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They must only be used in fog or falling snow (rules may vary depending on country). Do not forget to switch off the foglamps when they are no longer necessary.



Switching off of the lamps when the ignition is switched off

When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.



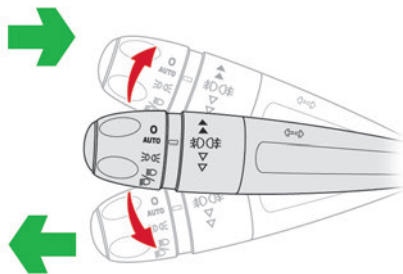
Switching on the lamps after switching off the ignition

To reactivate the lighting control, rotate the ring to the "0" position - lamps off, then to the desired position.

If the driver's door is opened, a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lamps are on.

The lamps, with the exception of the sidelamps, switch off automatically after a maximum duration of 30 minutes to prevent discharging of the battery.

Direction indicators



► Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.



If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than 20 seconds, the

volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 50 mph (80 km/h).

Three flashes

► Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Parking lamps

Vehicle side marking by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

► Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down, according to the traffic side (for example, when parking on the left, turn the lighting control stalk upwards; the right-hand sidelamps come on).

This action is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

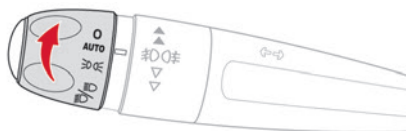
To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When the ring is at the "AUTO" position and a low level of ambient light is detected by the rain/sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They may also come on if

rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Switching on/off



► To activate it, turn the ring to the **"AUTO"** position.

► To deactivate it, turn the ring to any other position.

When the function is activated or deactivated, a message is displayed.

Malfunction

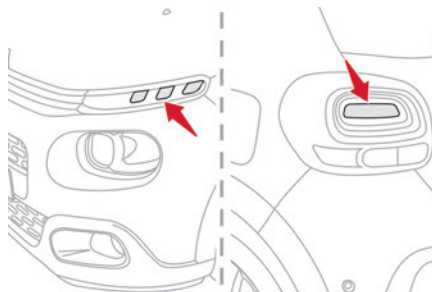
 In the event of a malfunction of the rain/sunshine sensor, the vehicle's lighting comes on and this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or the display of a message. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

 Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the interior rear view

mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

 In fog or snow, the rain/sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Daytime running lamps / Sidelamps



The front and rear lamps light up automatically when the engine starts.

They provide the following functions:

- Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at position **"0"** or **"AUTO"** with adequate light level).
- Sidelamps (lighting control stalk in **"AUTO"** position with low light level or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

 In daytime running lamps mode, the diodes are brighter.

Guide-me-home and welcome lighting

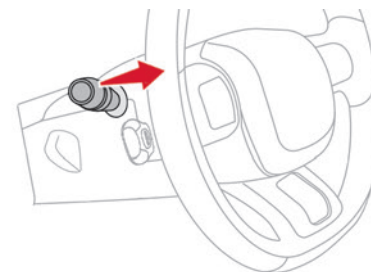
Guide-me-home lighting

Automatic

With the ring in the **"AUTO"** position, when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the guide-me-home lighting duration in the vehicle configuration menu.

Manual



► With the ignition off, pull the lighting control stalk toward you ("headlamp flash") to activate/deactivate the function.

Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically after a period of time.

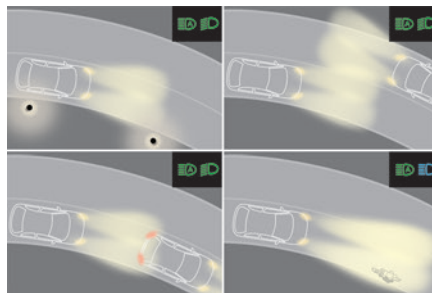
Welcome lighting

With the "Automatic headlamp illumination" function activated, in poor light, the sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.

Activation, deactivation and the duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the vehicle configuration menu.

Automatic headlamp dipping

When the ring is in the **"AUTO"** position, this system automatically switches between dipped and main beam headlamps according to the lighting and traffic conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.



! This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility and traffic, and for observation of driving and vehicle regulations.

i The system becomes operational when the vehicle exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h).
When the speed falls below 9 mph (15 km/h), the function is no longer operational.

Activation/Deactivation

It is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

► Flash the headlamps (going beyond the point of resistance) to activate the function.

The state of the system stays in the memory when switching off the ignition.

Operation

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or the traffic conditions do not allow the main beam headlamps to be lit:

– The dipped beam headlamps remain lit. These indicator lamps come on on the instrument panel.

If the ambient light level is very low and traffic conditions permit:

– The main beam headlamps come on automatically. These indicator lamps come on on the instrument panel.

The function is deactivated if the fog lamps are switched on or the system detects dense fog. When the fog lamps are switched off or the vehicle leaves the area of dense fog, the function is automatically reactivated.

This indicator lamp goes out when the function is deactivated.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

► A "headlamp flash" pauses the function:

- If the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam.
- If the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

To reactivate the system, flash the headlamps again.

i The system may be disrupted or not work correctly:

- When visibility conditions are poor (snowfall, heavy rain, etc.).
- If the windscreen in front of the camera is dirty, misted or obscured (for example, by a sticker).
- If the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.

The system is not able to detect:

- Road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians.
- Vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example, vehicles driving behind a safety barrier on a motorway).
- Vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

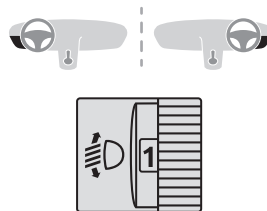
! Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.

The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.

In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the detection camera.

Headlamp beam height adjustment



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the headlamp beams should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0. (Initial adjustment)

Driver only or driver + front passenger

– Driver + front passenger + rear passengers

1. Driver + front passenger + rear passengers + load in the boot

– Driver + front passenger + rear passengers + load in the boot

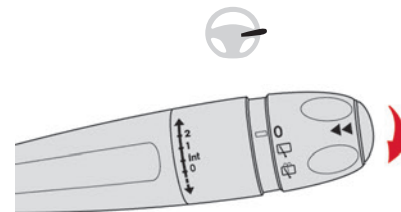
2. Driver only + maximum authorised load in the boot

Wiper control stalk

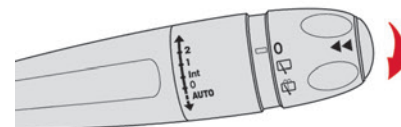
i In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and on the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

! Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

Without AUTO wiping



With AUTO wiping



Windscreen wipers

► To select the wiping speed: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2 Fast wiping (heavy rain)

1 Normal wiping (moderate rain)

Int Intermittent wiping (proportional to the vehicle's speed)

0 Off

↓ Single wipe (press down and release).

or

AUTO Automatic.

Refer to the corresponding section.

Single wipe

► Pull the stalk briefly towards you.

Front screenwash

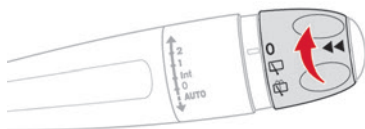
► Pull the wiper control stalk towards you and hold.

The screenwash then the windscreen wipers operate for a pre-determined time.

i The screenwash jets are not adjustable. Do not handle them (risk of damage).

! To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty. Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. During the winter period, use "very cold climate" rated products. Never top up with water.

Rear wiper



► Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

0 Off

Int Intermittent wipe

Wash Wash-wipe

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the front windscreen wipers are operating.

 This function is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

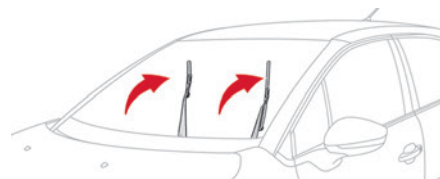
! In the event of accumulation of snow or hard frost or if a bicycle carrier is fitted to a towing device, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the touch screen's **Driving/ Vehicle** menu.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This maintenance position is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

- i** To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:
- handle them with care.
 - clean them regularly using soapy water.
 - avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windscreen.
 - replace them at the first signs of wear.

Before removing a front wiper blade



- Within one minute of switching off the ignition, any operation of the wiper control stalk will position the wiper blades vertically.
- Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a front wiper blade

- To return the wiper blades to their initial position, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Automatic windscreen wipers

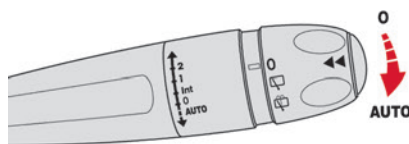
In AUTO mode, the windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. If rain is detected, the wiping adapts to the intensity of the rainfall automatically.

Detection of rainfall is by means of a rain/sunshine sensor at the top centre of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror.

- ! Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor.
- When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic wipers and the ignition.

In winter, wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wipers.

Switching on



- Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.

A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.

-  This indicator lamp appears in the instrument panel display, accompanied by a message.

Switching off

- Give the control stalk another brief push downwards or place the control stalk in another position (Int, 1 or 2).

-  This indicator lamp disappears from the instrument panel display, accompanied by a message.

- i If the ignition has been off for more than one minute, the automatic wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards.

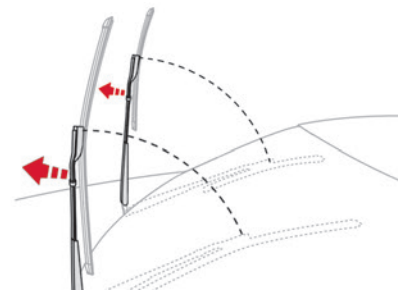
Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic wipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode.

Have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing a wiper blade

Removing/refitting at the front



- Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
- Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

- ! Take care not to hold the arms at the jet locations.

Do not touch the wiper blades. Risk of irreparable deformation.

Do not release them while moving them. Risk of damaging the windscreen!

- Clean the windscreen using screenwash fluid.

- i Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

- ▶ Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
- ▶ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- ▶ Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
- ▶ Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the windscreen.

Removing/refitting at the rear

- ▶ Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
- ▶ Clean the rear screen using screenwash fluid.
- ▶ Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
- ▶ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- ▶ Once again hold the arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the rear screen.

General safety recommendations

! Do not remove the labels attached in different places on your vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information for the vehicle.

! For all work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

! Depending on country regulations, certain safety equipment may be mandatory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

! **Installing electrical accessories:**

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of approved accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for

CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.

– Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the Manufacturer will result in the suspension of the commercial warranty.

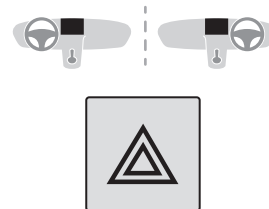
! Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, you must without fail contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

i Declarations of conformity for radio equipment

The relevant certificates are available on the <http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/> website.

Hazard warning lamps



► Pressing the red button causes all the direction indicators to flash. They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

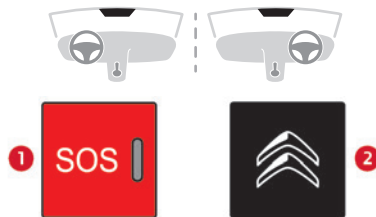
When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate. They can be turned off by pressing the button again.

Horn



- Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Emergency or assistance call



Localised Emergency Call (PE112)

- In an emergency, press button **1** for more than 2 seconds.

The lighting of the indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the emergency services*.

'Localised Emergency Call' immediately locates your vehicle and puts you in contact with the appropriate emergency services**.

- Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

The indicator lamp flashes when the vehicle data is sent, and then remains lit when communication is established.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically, independently of the deployment of any airbags.

i 'Localised Emergency Call' is a service that can be accessed free of charge.

System operation

- Upon switching on the ignition, if the indicator lamp lights up red, then green, and then goes out: the system is operating correctly.

- If the indicator lamp is fixed red: system malfunction
 - If the indicator lamp flashes red: replace the emergency battery.
- In the latter two cases, emergency and assistance call services may not work. Contact a dealer or a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i The system fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Data processing

All processing of personal information by the "Localised Emergency Call" system (PE112) complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR) and Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with Article 6.1, paragraph d) of Regulation 2016/679. Personal information processing is strictly limited to the management of the "Localised Emergency Call" system used with the "112" European single emergency call number. The "Localised Emergency Call" system is able to collect and process only the following

* In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

** In areas covered by 'Localised Emergency Call' and 'Localised Assistance Call'.

The list of countries covered and telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

data relating to the vehicle: chassis number, type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, most recent three locations and direction of travel, and a timestamped log file recording the automatic activation of the system.

The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority reception and handling of calls to the "112" emergency number.

i Data storage

Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operating mode.

The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations are stored.

When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

i Access to data

You have the right to access the data and, if necessary, submit a request to rectify, erase or restrict the processing of any personal information not processed in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR). Third parties to which data has been communicated shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in accordance with the aforementioned Directive, unless doing so would be impossible or require a disproportionate effort. You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the relevant data protection authority.

Localised Assistance Call

- If the vehicle breaks down, press button **2** for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message*).
- Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

i Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or position) between your vehicle and the CITROËN brand. It can be configured in the **Settings** menu on the touch screen.

By default, depending on equipment, deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the 2 buttons, then press the "Localised Assistance Call" button to confirm.

i If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify them to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

i For technical reasons, in particular to improve the quality of telematic services for customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system at any time.

i If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country. For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

* According to the geographic coverage of 'Localised Emergency Call', 'Localised Assistance Call' and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

The electronic stability control programme includes the following systems:

- Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
- Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
- Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.

ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.

EBFD manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

 This warning lamp comes on fixed in the event of an ABS malfunction.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

 This warning lamp, when lit together with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

 The normal operation of the ABS may result in slight vibrations in the brake pedal.

 **When braking in an emergency, press very firmly and maintain this pressure.**

 When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

 After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.

It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) / Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Anti-slip regulation optimises traction using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid wheel spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability while accelerating.

If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.



This warning lamp on the instrument panel flashes to indicate that they are operating.

Deactivation / Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle stuck in mud, immobilised in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be useful to deactivate the ASR system to freely spin the wheels and regain traction.

Reactivate the system as soon as the level of grip permits.



It is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Deactivation / reactivation is confirmed by the display of a message.

The ASR system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched back on or from 31 mph (50 km/h).

Reactivation is manual below 31 mph (50 km/h).

Malfuction



In the event of a system malfunction, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an onscreen message and audible signal.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

! ASR / DSC

These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures used by CITROËN dealers. The use of snow tyres is recommended, to ensure that these systems remain effective

in winter conditions. All four wheels must be fitted with tyres approved for the vehicle.

Seat belts

Inertia reel

The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to automatically adjust to your shape. The seat belt returns to its storage automatically when it is not used. The inertia reels are fitted with a device which automatically locks the strap in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. It can be released by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

Pyrotechnic pretensioning

This system improves safety in the event of a frontal or side impact.

Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.

Force limiter

This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

! In the event of an impact

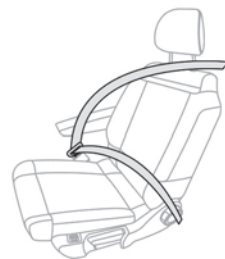
Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pyrotechnic device may trigger before and independently

of airbag deployment. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

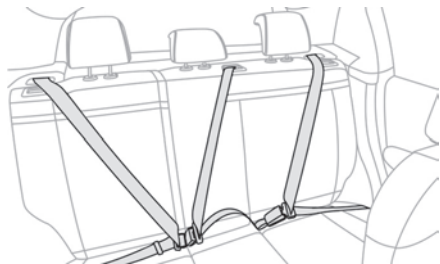
Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Front seat belts



The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and a force limiting system.

Rear seat belts



Each of the rear seats has a three-point seat belt with inertia reel.

The outer seats are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.

Fastening

- ▶ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ▶ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unlocking

- ▶ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ▶ Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Seat belt not fastened/unfastened alerts

LCD symbols instrument panel

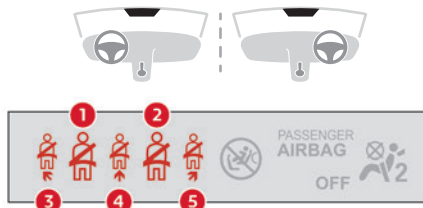


- A. Front left seat belt not fastened/unfastened warning lamp
- B. Front right seat belt not fastened/unfastened warning lamp

LCD text instrument panel



- C. Front and rear seat belts not fastened/unfastened warning lamp



1. Front left seat belt warning lamp
2. Front right seat belt warning lamp
3. Rear left seat belt warning lamp
4. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp
5. Rear right seat belt warning lamp

If the corresponding seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened, when the ignition is switched on, the seat belts warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the corresponding warning lamp (1 to 5) comes on in red in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lamps display.

i If a rear seat belt is not fastened, the corresponding warning lamp (3 to 5) comes on for around 30 seconds.

From about 12 mph (20 km/h) and for 2 minutes, each warning lamp corresponding to an occupied seat whose seat belt is unfastened flashes, accompanied by an audible signal. After these 2 minutes, the corresponding seat warning lamp remains on until the driver or the front/rear passenger fasten their seat belt.

Advice

! The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.

Wherever seated in the vehicle, you must always fasten the seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role fully.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

! Installation

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis. The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

In order to be effective, a seat belt:

- must be tightened as close to the body as possible;
- must be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, ensuring that it is not twisted;
- must only be used to secure one person;
- must not show signs of tearing or fraying;
- must not be changed or modified, in order to avoid affecting its performance.

! Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.

Never carry a child on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Maintenance

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Have the seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

Airbags

General information

System designed to help improve the safety of the occupants sitting in the front seats and the rear outer seats, in the event of a violent collision. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts equipped with a force limiting system.

Electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

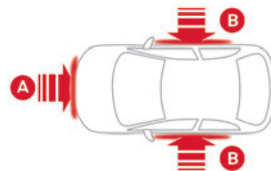
- In the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants.
- In the event of a slight impact, a rear impact and under certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not deploy; only the seat belt helps to protect you in these situations.

The seriousness of the impact depends on the nature of the obstacle and the speed of the vehicle at the moment of collision.

! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones

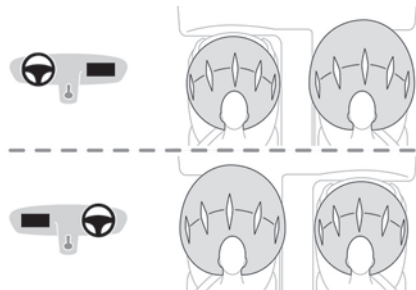


A. Front impact zone

B. Side impact zone

i When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation. The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, in order to limit the risk of head and chest injuries.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

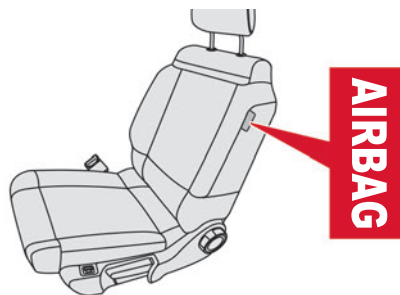
i The front airbags are adaptive. In particular, they inflate less firmly in the presence of a smaller occupant, with the seat set in a forward longitudinal position.

Deployment

They deploy, except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated*, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

Lateral airbags



In the event of a serious side impact, this system protects the driver and front passenger to mitigate the risk of injury to the chest between the hip and the shoulder. Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.

The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the vehicle's occupant and the corresponding door panel.

Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.

Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

It deploys simultaneously with the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front and rear occupants of the vehicle and the corresponding windows.

Malfunction



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

* For more information on Deactivating the front passenger airbag, refer to the corresponding section.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed. In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Advice

! **For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.**

Adopt a normal upright sitting position.

Fasten the seat belt ensuring it is correctly positioned and adjusted.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.

Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag systems must only be performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed. The airbag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same

time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

! Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

! Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (clothes, etc.), as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!

Such work must only be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.

Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, as they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Child seats

i The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

– In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than 4 ft 11" (150 cm) tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.

- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **Children weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rear facing" position, whether in the front or rear of the vehicle.**

I It is recommended that children travel on the **rear seats** of the vehicle:

- **'rear facing'** up to the age of 3,
- **'forward facing'** over the age of 3.

! Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and tightened.

For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

Advice

! An incorrectly installed child seat compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the harness of child seats, keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures

the child seat firmly on the seat of the vehicle. If the passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

! Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs. Use a booster seat with backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

! Additional protections

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock". Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,

- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child seat at the rear

"Forward facing" or "Rearward facing"



► Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat or the "rearward facing" child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

► Verify that the backrest of the "forward facing" child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and is ideally in contact with it.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

Child seat at the front



► Adjust the front passenger seat to the **maximum rear longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened.**

"Rearward facing"



! The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward facing child seat. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag deploys.**

"Forward facing"



! You must leave the front passenger airbag active.



Warning label - Front passenger airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, reminded by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag



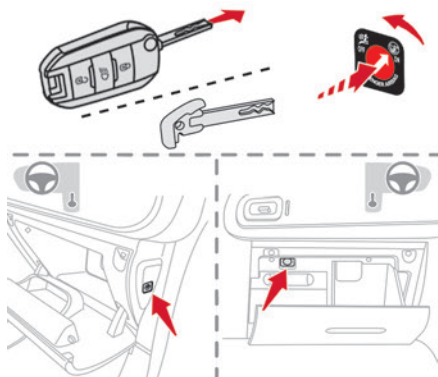
Passenger airbag OFF

! For your child's safety, the front passenger airbag **MUST** be deactivated when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child would be exposed to the risk of death or serious injury in the event of airbag deployment.

! **Vehicles not equipped with a deactivation/reactivation control**
Installing a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat is strictly prohibited - risk of death or serious injury in the event of airbag deployment!

Deactivating/Reactivating the front passenger airbag

For vehicles on which it is fitted, the control is located inside the glove box.



With the ignition off:

► To deactivate the airbag, turn the key in the switch to the **"OFF"** position.

► To reactivate it, turn the key to the **"ON"** position.

When the ignition is switched on:

 This warning lamp comes on and remains lit to signal the deactivation.

Or

 This warning lamp comes on for about 1 minute to signal the activation.

Recommended child seats

Range of recommended child seats secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



L1

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"

Installed in the "rearward facing" position.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L5

"RÖMER KIDFIX XP"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L6

"GRACO Booster"

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing universally approved **(a)** child seats secured using the seat belt, based on the child's weight and the seat position in the vehicle.

			Weight of the child / indicative age			
Seat		Front passenger airbag	Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	From 15 to 25 kg (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	From 22 to 36 kg (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 1 (c)	Passenger seat	Deactivated "OFF"	U			
		Activated "ON"	X	UF		
Row 2 (d)	Rear seat behind the driver's seat		U			
	Rear seat behind the passenger seat					
	Centre rear seat (c) (e)					

U: Seat position suitable for installing a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" use.

UF: Seat position suitable for installing a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "forward facing" use.

X: Seat position not suitable for installing a child seat for the stated weight class.

(a): Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in any vehicle using the seat belt.

(b): Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car" infant carriers cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

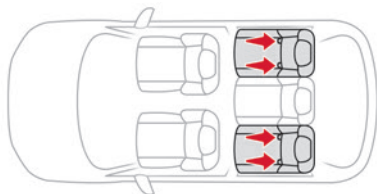
(c): Refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing your child in this seat position.

(d): To install a "rearward facing" or "forward facing" child seat at the rear, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.

(e): A child seat with a support leg must never be installed in this seat position.

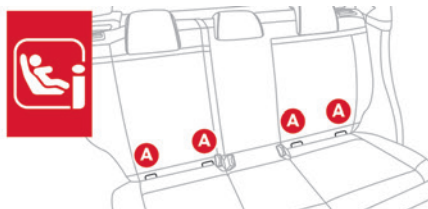
"ISOFIX" mountings

The seats shown below are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:



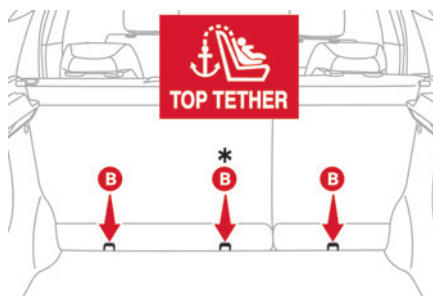
The mountings comprise three rings for each seat, indicated by a marking:

- Two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion.



The 2 latches of **ISOFIX child seats** are secured to them.

- One ring **B**, located behind the seat, called the **TOP TETHER**, for fixing seats fitted with an upper strap.



* Depending on country of sale.

This system prevents the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a front impact.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in the vehicle.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- ▶ Remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed).
- ▶ Route the strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, in-between the 2 head restraint anchor points.
- ▶ Secure the upper strap hook to ring **B**.
- ▶ Tighten the upper strap.

i When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat of the bench seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

! An incorrectly installed child seat compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident. Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

i For information about the options for fitting ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

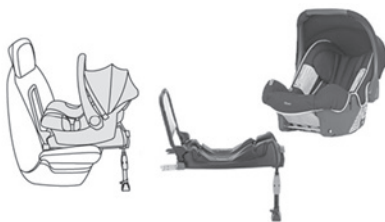
Recommended ISOFIX child seats

i Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base"

(size category: E)

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base"

(size category: E)

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg

Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**.

The base has a support leg, height-adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor.

This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX"

(size category: B1)

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg



Suitable for forward-facing installation only. Attached to rings **A** and ring **B**, referred to as TOP TETHER, using an upper strap.

Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down.

This child seat can also be used in seat positions not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.

Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European regulations, this table shows the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings.

In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX child seat size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

			Weight of the child / indicative age									
			Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+) Up to about 1 year old			From 9 to 18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat			Carrycot		Rearward facing			Rearward facing		Forward facing		
ISOFIX size category			F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Seat		Front passenger airbag										
Row 1 (a)	Passenger seat	Deactivated "OFF"	Not ISOFIX									
		Activated "ON"	Not ISOFIX									
Row 2	Rear seat behind the driver's seat		X(1)	IL(3)	IL	IL(3)	IL	IUF/IL				
	Rear seat behind the passenger seat			IL(2)		IL(2)						
	Rear centre seat		Not ISOFIX									

(a): Refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child in this seat position.

IUF: Seat position suitable for the installation of an Isofix Universal seat, "Forward facing", secured using the upper strap.

IL: Seat position suitable for the installation of an Isofix Semi-Universal seat, either:

- "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
- a carrycot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For information on securing the upper strap using the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

X: Seat position not suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX seat or carrycot for the stated weight group.

(1): Installing a carrycot in this seat position may prevent the use of one or more of the other seats in this row.

(2): Adjust the front seat to its fully forward longitudinal position.

(3): Adjust the front seat to its maximum height.

i-Size child seats

i-Size child seats have two latches that engage on the two rings **A**.

These i-Size child seats also have:

- either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B**.
- or a support leg that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat position.

Their role is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.

For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

In accordance with the new European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing i-Size child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings approved for i-Size.

Seat		Front passenger airbag	i-Size restraint system
Row 1 (a)	Passenger seat	Deactivated "OFF"	Not i-Size
		Activated "ON"	
Row 2	Rear seat behind the driver's seat		i-U
	Rear seat behind the passenger seat		
	Rear centre seat		Not i-Size

i-U : Suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category, "forward facing" and "rearward facing".

i-UF: Only suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category which are "forward facing".

X: Seat position not suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category.

(a): Refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child in this seat position.

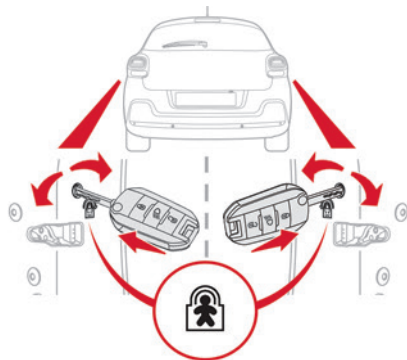
Manual child lock



This system prevents opening of a rear door using its interior handle.

The control, red in colour, is located on the edge of each rear door (marked by a label).

Locking / Unlocking



► To lock, turn the **red** control as far as it will go using the integral key:

- To the right on the left-hand rear door.
- To the left on the right-hand rear door.

► To unlock, turn it in the opposite direction.

! Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.

Electric child lock



This control prevents the opening of the rear doors using their interior handles.

Activation/Deactivation



► With the ignition on, press this button to activate/deactivate the child lock. A message is displayed, confirming activation/deactivation of the child lock. When the indicator lamp is on, the child lock is activated.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control. Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition. Always keep the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time. In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

! Any other status of the indicator lamp indicates a malfunction of the electric child lock. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Driving recommendations

- Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
- Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
- Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
- Stop the vehicle to carry out operations that require close attention (such as adjustments).
- During long trips, take a break every two hours.

Important!

! **Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation.** Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

! In severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox).

! **Never drive with the parking brake applied.** Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!

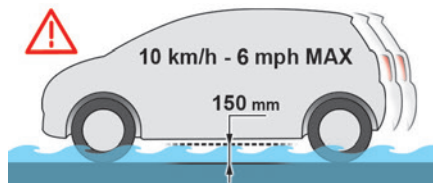
! **Do not park the vehicle or leave the engine running on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, etc.).** The exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

! **Never leave a vehicle unattended with the engine running.** If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P** (depending on the type of gearbox).

! **Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised.**

On flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.



If you are obliged to drive on a flooded road:

- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
 - deactivate the Stop & Start function,
 - drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
 - do not stop and do not switch off the engine.
- On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads. If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In case of towing

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

i Respect the maximum towable weights. **At altitude:** reduce the maximum load by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude; the density of the air decreases with altitude and the performance of the engine reduces.

! **New vehicle:** do not pull a trailer before having driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

i If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

Before setting off

Nose weight

► Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight (at the point where it joins your vehicle) approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Tyres

► Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

► Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

i If a genuine CITROËN towing device is used, the rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal.

When driving

Cooling

Towing a trailer uphill increases the temperature of the coolant. The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature. The cooling capacity of the fan does not increase with engine speed.

► Reduce speed and lower the engine speed, so as to limit the heating-up.

In all cases, pay attention to the coolant temperature.



If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Brakes

Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Side wind

Bear in mind the increased susceptibility to the wind that the vehicle will have.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic immobiliser

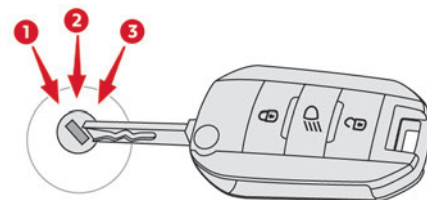
The keys include an electronic engine immobiliser system, whose secret code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible. If the system malfunctions, indicated by the display of a message, the engine will not start. Contact a CITROËN dealer.



For safety and theft protection reasons, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it. It is recommended that you keep it with you.

Starting / Switching off the engine with the key

Key ignition switch



It has 3 positions:

- **1. Stop:** inserting and removing the key, steering column locked.
- **2. Ignition:** steering column unlocked, ignition on, Diesel preheating, engine running.
- **3. Starting.**



Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control. It would weigh down on its shaft in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or portable devices to be charged. Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode : the power supply is cut off

automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

Starting the engine

With the parking brake applied:

- ▶ With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ▶ With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector in mode **N** or **P** then fully depress the brake pedal.
- ▶ Insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code.
- ▶ Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

i In certain cases, you may have to apply significant force to move the steering wheel (wheels on full lock, for example).

- ▶ With a **petrol engine**, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine starts, release the key.

i With **petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations for anything up to 2 minutes while stationary with the engine running (accelerated idle speed).

- ▶ With a **Diesel engine**, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine preheating system.



Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel, then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine starts, release the key.



In wintry conditions, the warning lamp may stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.



If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few seconds before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after a few attempts, do not keep trying - risk of damaging the starter motor and the engine. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



In mild conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

Switching off the engine

- ▶ Immobilise the vehicle.
- ▶ With the engine at idle, turn the key to position **1**.
- ▶ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ▶ To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.



To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.



Never switch off the ignition before the complete immobilisation of the vehicle. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!



Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground. When leaving the vehicle, keep the key in your possession and lock the vehicle.

Energy economy mode

After the engine has stopped (position **1. Stop**), for a maximum combined duration of about thirty minutes, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, courtesy lamps, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, etc.



For more information on **Energy economy mode**, refer to the corresponding section.



Key left in
When opening the driver's door, an alert message is displayed, accompanied by an

audible signal, to remind you that the key is still in the ignition switch at position **1 (Stop)**. If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour. To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Starting / Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting

i The electronic key must be present in the passenger compartment. If it is not detected, a message is displayed. Move the electronic key so that the engine can be started or switched off. If there is still a problem, refer to the "Key not detected - Back-up starting or Back-up switch-off" section.

Starting



- ▶ With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral and fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ▶ With an **automatic gearbox**, select mode **P** or **N** and press the brake pedal.
- ▶ Press the "**START/STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

For **Diesel engines**, when the temperature is below zero and/or the engine is cold, starting will only occur once the preheating warning lamp is off.

 If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button:

- ▶ Keep the pedal fully depressed and do not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.
- If one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed. In some circumstances, a message indicates that it is necessary to turn the steering wheel

while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to assist unlocking of the steering column.

i With **petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations for anything up to 2 minutes while stationary with the engine running (accelerated idle speed).

Switching off

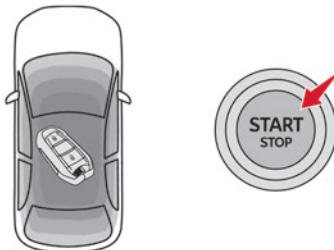
- ▶ Immobilise the vehicle, with the engine at idle.
 - ▶ With a **manual gearbox**, ideally put the gear lever into neutral.
 - ▶ With an **automatic gearbox**, ideally select mode **P** or **N**.
 - ▶ Press the "**START/STOP**" button..
- In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel to lock the steering column.

i If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not switch off.

! With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

! Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

Switching on the ignition without starting the engine



With the electronic key in the passenger compartment, pressing the **"START/STOP"** button, **without pressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on without starting the engine.

► Press this button **again** to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

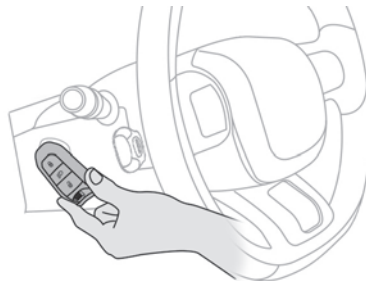
i With the ignition on, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate state of charge in the battery.

Key not detected

Back-up starting

A back-up reader is fitted to the steering column so that the engine can be started if the system

does not detect the key in the recognition zone, or if the battery in the electronic key is flat.



- Place and hold the remote control against the reader.
- **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- **With an automatic gearbox**, select mode **P**, then fully depress the brake pedal.
- Press the **"START/STOP"** button. The engine starts.

Back-up switch-off



If the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.

► To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the **"START/STOP"** button for approximately 5 seconds.

In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency switch-off

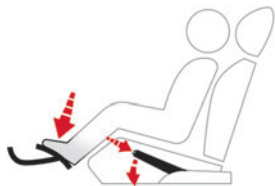
In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).

► Press the **"START/STOP"** button for about 5 seconds.

In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

Parking brake

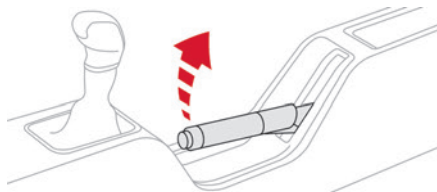
Release



► Pull the parking brake lever up slightly, press the release button, then lower the lever fully.

(!) When driving the vehicle, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message, this means that the parking brake is still applied or has not been fully released.

Application



► Pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise the vehicle.

! When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and engage a gear (manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to position **P** (automatic gearbox). For towing, your vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

5-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear



- Fully depress the clutch pedal.
- Push the gear lever fully to the right, then backwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting the engine:

- Always select neutral.
- Depress the clutch pedal.

6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear



► Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear selector to the left, then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting the engine:

- Always select neutral.
- Press the clutch pedal.

Automatic gearbox

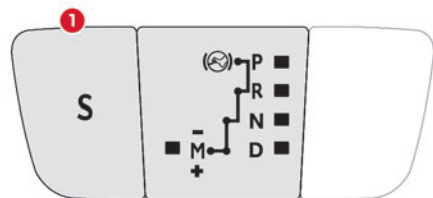
6-speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of automatic operation or manual gear changing.

Two driving modes are available:

- **Automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox:

- With the **Sport** programme for a more dynamic driving style.
- **Manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selector module



- 1. **Sport** programme
- P. Parking
 - Vehicle immobilised, parking brake applied or released.
 - Starting the engine.
- R. Reverse gear
 - Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.
- N. Neutral
 - Vehicle immobilised, parking brake applied.
 - Starting the engine.
- D. Automatic operation
- M. + / - Manual operation
 - ▶ To move up / down through the gears, move backwards / forwards.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When a position is selected in the gate with the gear selector, the corresponding indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel.

- P. Park
- R. Reverse
- N. Neutral
- D. Drive (automatic operation)
- S. **Sport** programme
- 1...6. Gear engaged during manual operation
- . Instruction not processed in manual operation

Foot on the brake

- () ▶ Depress the brake pedal when this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel (e.g. when starting the engine).

Starting the vehicle

- () ▶ With your foot on the brake pedal, select position **P** or **N**.
- ▶ Start the engine.
- If the conditions are not met, you will hear an audible signal, accompanied by the display of a message.
- ▶ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
- ▶ Release the parking brake, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.
- ▶ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.

- ▶ Gradually release the brake pedal. The vehicle moves off immediately.

i If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.

! When the engine is running at idle with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle when the engine is running. When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Automatic operation

- ▶ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.
- The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the driving style, the road profile and the load in the vehicle.
- For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.
- When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.

If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not shift to a higher gear for safety reasons.

 Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.

Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

"Sport" programme

This special programme supplements the automatic operation in specific conditions of use.

"Sport"

► Press this button, once the engine has started.

"**S**" appears on the instrument panel.

The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.

Return to automatic operation

► At any time, press the selected button again to quit the activated programme and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation



To limit fuel consumption during an extended standstill with the engine running (for example, in a traffic jam), set the gear selector to **N** and apply the parking brake.

► Selecting position **M** enables sequential shifting between the six gears.

► Push backwards to shift up a gear.

► Push forwards to shift down a gear.

The gearbox only changes gear if the road speed and engine speed permit; apart from this condition, the rules for automatic operation temporarily apply.

D disappears, and the gears engaged appear in succession on the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the selected gear flashes for a few seconds, then the gear actually activated is displayed.

It is possible to change from position **D** to position **M** at any time.

When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.

The **Sport** programme is inactive in manual operation.



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (gear selector between two positions).

Switching the vehicle off

Before switching off the engine, it is possible to engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.

In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.

 If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal sounds and a message appears.

► Return the gear selector to **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp comes on and a message is displayed, when the ignition is switched on. In this case, the gearbox goes into back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. It is possible to feel a significant jolt (without risk for the gearbox) while changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



There is a risk of damaging the gearbox:

- If the accelerator and brake pedals are pressed simultaneously.
- In the event of a battery failure, forcing the selector from position **P** to another position.



With an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Gear efficiency indicator

(Depending on engine.)

This system helps reduce fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and the vehicle's equipment, the system may advise to skip one or more gears.

Gear shift recommendations should not be considered compulsory. In fact, the road layout, the traffic density and safety remain the deciding factors when choosing the best gear. The driver therefore remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the indications issued by the system.

This function cannot be deactivated.

N On certain BlueHDi Diesel versions with manual gearbox, the system may suggest changing into neutral (**N** is displayed in the instrument panel) so that the engine can go into standby (STOP mode of Stop & Start), in certain driving conditions.

i With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.

4 The information appears in the instrument panel, in the form of an arrow and the recommended gear.

i The system adapts its gear shift recommendation according to the driving

conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the driver's requirements (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear;
- engaging reverse.

Hill start assist

This system keeps your vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

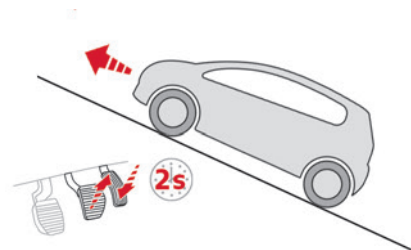
This system is only active when:

- The vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.
- Certain slope conditions are met.
- The driver's door is closed.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist. If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake indicator lamp is on fixed in the instrument panel.

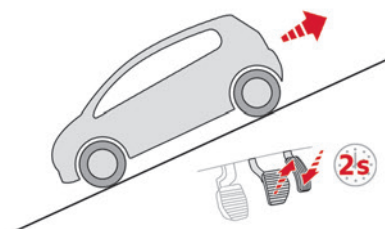
! The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, use of the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

Operation



Facing uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal:

- provided you are in first gear or neutral with a manual gearbox.
- provided you are in mode **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.



Facing downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

Malfunction



These warning lamps come on in the event of a malfunction, accompanied by an onscreen message. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during phases when the vehicle is stopped (red lights, queues, etc.). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as the driver wishes to move off again.

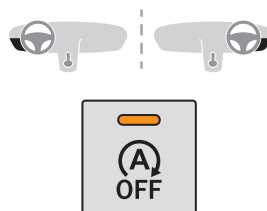
Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

Deactivation/Reactivation

The function is **activated** by default when the ignition is switched on.

With the dashboard button



Associated indicator lamp



Function activated.



Opening the bonnet

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.



Driving on flooded roads

Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Operation

Main conditions for operation

- The driver's door must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
- The state of charge of the battery must be sufficient.
- The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
- The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35 °C.

Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)

The engine automatically goes into standby as soon as the driver indicates the intention of stopping.

- With a **manual gearbox**: with the gear lever in neutral and the clutch pedal released.
- With an **automatic gearbox**: with the gear selector in position **D** or **M**, the brake pedal depressed until the vehicle stops or the gear selector in position **N**, with the vehicle stationary.

Time counter

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases:

The engine will not go into standby if all of the conditions for operation are not met and in the following cases.

- Steep slope (ascending or descending).

- Vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (with the key or the "START/STOP" button).
- Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Demisting active.
- Braking assistance is being used.



In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.



After the engine has restarted, STOP mode is not available until the vehicle has reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).



During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

Engine restarting (START mode)

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again.

- ▶ **With a manual gearbox:** with the clutch pedal fully depressed.
- ▶ **With an automatic gearbox:**
 - With the selector in position **D** or **M**: with the brake pedal released.
 - With the selector in position **N** and the brake pedal released: with the selector at **D** or **M**.
 - With the selector in position **P** and the brake pedal depressed: with the selector at **R**, **N**, **D** or **M**.

- Reverse gear engaged.

Special cases

The engine will restart automatically if all conditions for operation are met again and in the following cases.

- Speed of the vehicle exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h).
- Some specific conditions (braking assistance, air conditioning setting, etc.).



In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Malfunctions

In the event of a malfunction, the button's indicator lamp flashes briefly, then remains on. Have the vehicle checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle stalls in STOP mode

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on if there is a fault.

- ▶ Switch off the ignition then start the engine again with the key or the "START/STOP" button.



The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.

All work concerning the battery must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Under-inflation detection

This system automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.

It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed.**

The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.



Under-inflation detection does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) as well as before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):

- worsens road-holding.
- lengthens braking distances.
- causes premature wear of the tyres.
- increases fuel consumption.



The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.

For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Checking tyre pressures

This check should be done when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).

Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

i Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Under-inflation alert



This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.

- Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold.
- If it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.

- In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

i The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.

! Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tyre pressure label.

Check the pressures of the four tyres before performing the reinitialisation.

The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

The reinitialisation of the system is done with the **ignition on** and the vehicle stationary:

- Via the vehicle configuration menu for vehicles fitted with a touch screen.
- Via the instrument panel display screen or via the button on the dashboard for vehicles without a screen.
- Via the instrument panel display screen for vehicles without a screen.

Touch screen



The system reinitialisation is done via the **Vehicle / Driving** menu.

- In the **Vehicle / Driving** menu, select the **"Driving functions"** tab.

- On the page, select the **"Under-inflation reset"** function.

- Select **"Yes"** to confirm.

The reinitialisation is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Monochrome screen C



The function is reset via the screen's **"Personalisation-configuration"** menu.

- Select the **"Define the vehicle parameters"** menu.

- Select the **"Comfort"** menu.
- Select the **"Tyre inflation"** menu.
- Select the **"Reset"** function.
- Select **"Yes"** to confirm.

An audible signal confirms the reinitialisation operation.

Instrument panel display screen

SET 000

- Press this button briefly to go to the menu.

- Select the corresponding item then confirm. Reinitialisation is confirmed by a high-pitched audible signal.

A deep tone audible signal indicates that the reinitialisation has not been done.

Dashboard button



- Press and hold this button.

Reinitialisation is confirmed by a high-pitched audible signal.

A low-pitched audible signal indicates that the reinitialisation operation has not been successful.

Malfunction



The illumination of these warning lamps indicates a fault with the system.

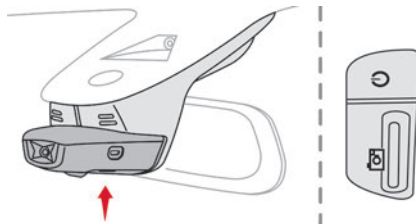
A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN ConnectedCAM®

(Depending on country of sale.)



This camera, installed at the top of the windscreen and connected wirelessly, allows you to:

- Take photos and videos on demand and share them.
- Send the vehicle's GPS coordinates to a smartphone.
- Record videos automatically in the event of a vehicle impact.

i As the use of the CITROËN ConnectedCAM® is under your control and your responsibility, you must comply with the regulations for the protection of personal data (images of other people, vehicle number plates, protected buildings, etc.). Check first that your insurance company accepts the footage collected from the CITROËN ConnectedCAM® as evidence.

! Without exception, any action which the driver takes concerning the camera must be **with the vehicle stationary**.

Operation

To use all camera functions, you must perform the following operations:

- Download the **CITROËN**

ConnectedCAM® application onto a smartphone.

- Pair the smartphone with the camera following the instructions given by the application.

Pairing is necessary at the first connection. After this it will be automatic.

The default pairing code is: "ConnectedCAM".

On/Off

- Press and hold this button to switch the camera on/off (confirmed by the indicator lamp coming on/going off).

When the camera is switched on, video recording is automatic and permanent.

The status of the function is stored when the ignition is switched off.

Managing photos and videos

- Press this button briefly to take a photo.

An audible signal confirms that the request has been acknowledged.



► Press and hold this button to record a video.

A micro USB socket also allows the data from the camera to be saved onto other media such as computers, tablets, etc.

Thanks to the **CITROËN ConnectedCAM®** application, you can then automatically and immediately share your photos and videos on social networks or by email.

An audible signal confirms that the request has been acknowledged.

Resetting the system



► Press and hold these 2 buttons simultaneously to reset the system.

This action erases all data recorded in the camera and reinitialises the camera's default pairing code.

! For safety reasons, the driver must not use the **CITROËN ConnectedCAM®** application from a smartphone while driving. He or she must perform any action requiring sustained attention when the vehicle is stationary.

Malfunction



When a system fault occurs, the indicator lamp in the button flashes.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations

i Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climatic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.

It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the relative distances and speeds of other vehicles and to anticipate their movements before indicating and changing lane.

The systems cannot exceed the limits of the laws of physics.

i Driving aids

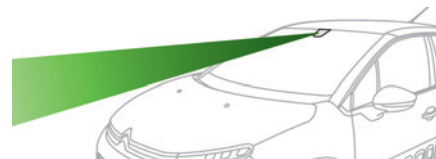
You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the interior and exterior rear view mirrors, always keep the feet close to the pedals and take a break every two hours.

i Manoeuvring aids

The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

! Radar

The operation of the radar as well as the associated functions may be impaired through the accumulation of dirt (mud, frost, etc.), in certain difficult weather conditions (very heavy rain, snow) or if the bumper is damaged. If the front bumper is to be repainted, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.



! Driving aids camera

This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windscreen area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.

On versions with camera alone, this message indicates to you that the camera is obstructed:

"Driving aids camera: visibility limited, see user guide".

In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.

In the event of a windscreen replacement, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

Other cameras

The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the relief.

In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

Sensors

The operation of the sensors as well as the associated functions may be disturbed by sound interference such as that emitted

by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.

The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences). Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre. Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

Maintenance

Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly. When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

Mats

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control. To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

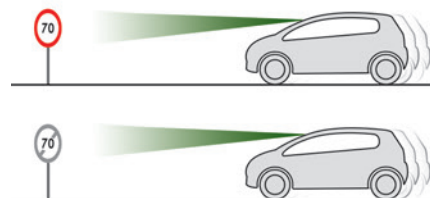
Units of speed

Ensure that the units of speed displayed in the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in. If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.

In case of doubt, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system displays the maximum authorised speed in the instrument panel, according to the speed limits in the country in which you are driving, using:

- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit details from the navigation system mapping.

! Navigation mapping should be regularly updated in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

! The units for the speed limit (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in. This should be taken into account so that you observe the speed limit. For the system to work correctly when changing country, the speed unit in the instrument panel must correspond to that of the country you are driving in.

! The automatic reading of road signs is a driving aid system and does not always display speed limits correctly. The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system. The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

i Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed. The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated when passing

a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

Activation / Deactivation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

 It is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



The system is activated: "MAX" is displayed on the instrument panel. The information associated with speed limit recognition is displayed after the trip computer data. To display it:



► Press the button located on the end of the wiper control stalk.



► Press the thumbwheel located on the steering wheel.



On detecting speed limit information, the system displays the detected value, accompanied by a message.

The driver can adjust the vehicle's speed according to the information given by the system. A message is displayed and "MEM" flashes on the display: with the **speed limiter or cruise control** activated, the system suggests a speed setting.

Operating limits

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits, especially those imposed in the following cases:

- poor weather (rain, snow),
- atmospheric pollution,
- when towing,
- driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted,
- Tyre repaired using the temporary puncture repair kit,
- young drivers.

It is possible for the system to not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period and in the following situations:

- road signs that are obstructed, do not comply with the standard, are damaged or distorted,
- obsolete or incorrect maps.

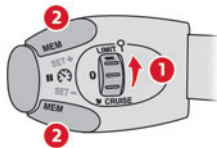
Memorising the speed setting



In addition to **Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation**, the driver can select the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control using the speed limiter or cruise control memorisation button.

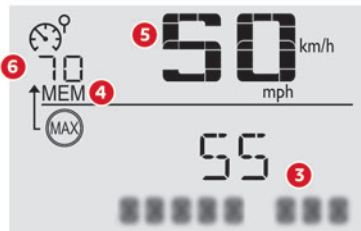
i For more information on the **Speed limiter** or **Cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering mounted controls



1. Speed limiter/cruise control mode selection
2. Memorise the speed setting

Information displayed on the instrument panel



3. Speed limit indication.
4. Speed memorisation request.
5. Current speed of the vehicle.
6. Current speed setting.

Memorising the speed



► Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control. The speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.

Upon detecting a sign suggesting a new speed setting, the system displays the value and a message prompting you to save it as a new speed setting. "MEM" flashes for a few seconds on the display.

i If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (9 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation, the "MEM" symbol is not displayed.

► Press button **2**once to save the suggested speed value.

A message is displayed, confirming the request.

► Press button **2**again to confirm and save the new speed setting.

The display then reverts to its previous state.

Speed limiter

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

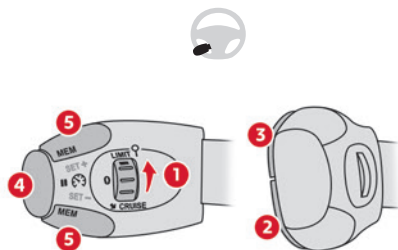


This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually.

The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h). The speed setting remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

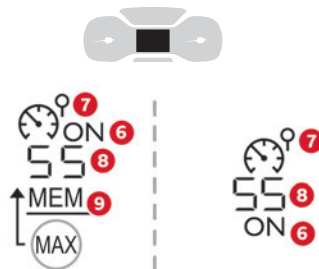
Steering-mounted control



1. ON (**LIMIT** position) / OFF (position 0)
2. Reduce the speed setting
3. Increase the speed setting
4. Pause / resume speed limiter with the speed setting previously stored
5. Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation (**MEM** display)

For more information on the **Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter on/pause
7. Speed limiter mode selected
8. Programmed speed value
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system

Switching on/pausing

- ▶ Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**LIMIT**" position to select speed limiter mode; the function is paused.
- ▶ If the limit speed setting is suitable (most recent speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.
- ▶ Pressing button **4** again temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

i When the speed setting remains below the vehicle's speed for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning is emitted.

Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To modify the limit speed setting based on the vehicle's current speed:

- ▶ Briefly press button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- ▶ Press and hold button **2** or **3** to change the value in steps of + or - 5 mph (8 km/h).

To change the limit speed setting based on the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation:

- ▶ the suggested speed is displayed on the instrument panel,
- ▶ press button **5** once; a message is displayed, confirming the memorisation request,
- ▶ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed is immediately displayed as the new speed setting on the instrument panel.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

- ▶ Fully depress the accelerator pedal. The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed speed setting flashes.
 - ▶ Release the accelerator pedal to return to below the programmed speed.
- When the limit speed is exceeded other than as a result of action by the driver (on a steep

slope, for example), an audible signal triggers immediately.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting. If necessary, use the brakes to control the speed of your vehicle.

Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the speed setting, the speed limiter resumes operation: the display of the speed setting becomes fixed again.

Switching off

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the **"OFF"** position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

Malfunction



The display of dashes (flashing then fixed) indicates a fault with the speed limiter. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cruise control - particular recommendations

! For the safety of everyone, only use the cruise control where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and keeping an adequate safety distance.

Remain vigilant when the cruise control is activated. If you hold one of the speed setting modification buttons down, a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle may occur.

When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the speed of your vehicle.

On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

i Exceeding the programmed speed setting

You can **temporarily** exceed the speed setting by pressing the accelerator pedal (the programmed speed flashes).

To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal (when the set speed is reached again, the displayed speed stops flashing).

! Operating limits

Never use the system in the following situations:

- In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.
- In heavy traffic (except versions with the Stop & Go function).
- On winding or steep roads.
- On slippery or flooded roads.
- In poor weather conditions.
- Driving on a speed circuit.
- Driving on a rolling road.
- When using snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

Cruise control

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and to **Cruise control - particular recommendations**.

 This system automatically keeps the vehicle's speed at the cruise value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without using the accelerator pedal. The cruise control is **switched on** manually. It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).

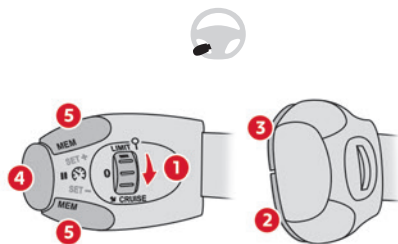
With a manual gearbox, third gear or higher must be engaged.

With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or second gear or higher in mode **M** must be engaged.

i The cruise control remains active after changing gear on engines fitted with a manual gearbox and Stop & Start.

i Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

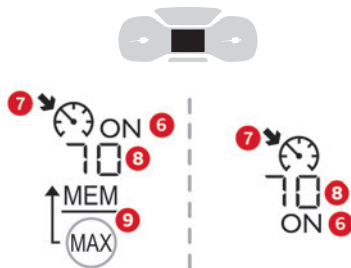
Steering mounted control



1. ON (**CRUISE** position) / OFF
2. Activation of cruise control at the current speed / decrease speed setting
3. Activation of cruise control at the current speed / increase speed setting
4. Pausing / resumption of cruise control with the speed setting previously stored
5. Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation (**MEM** display)

For more information on the **Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



6. Cruise control pause/resume
7. Cruise control mode selection
8. Speed setting value
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system

Switching on/pausing

- ▶ Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.
- ▶ Press button **2** or **3** to activate cruise control and save a speed setting when the vehicle has reached the desired speed; the vehicle's current speed is saved as the speed setting.
- ▶ Release the accelerator pedal.
- ▶ Pressing button **4** temporarily pauses the function.

- ▶ Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

Changing the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be active.

To change the cruise speed setting, based on the vehicle's current speed:

- ▶ In +/- 1 mph (1.6 km/h) steps, briefly press button **2** or **3** as often as necessary.
- ▶ Continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (8 km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

! Pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

! As a precaution, we recommend setting a cruise speed similar to the vehicle's current speed, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration.

To modify the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the Speed Limit Recognition and Recommendation shown on the instrument panel:

- ▶ Press button **5** once; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
- ▶ Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed is immediately shown on the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

If needed (when overtaking, for example) it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Cruise control is temporarily deactivated and the programmed speed displayed flashes.

To return to the programmed speed, release the accelerator pedal.

Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, the cruise control resumes operation: the display of the programmed speed becomes fixed again.



When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused.

To activate the system again, with the vehicle speed above 25 mph (40 km/h), press button 4.

Switching off

► Turn the thumbwheel 1 to the "OFF" position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Malfunction



The display of dashes (flashing then fixed) indicates a malfunction with the cruise control system.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system:

- warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian.
- reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or limit its severity.

This system is comprised of three functions:

- Collision Risk Alert.

- Intelligent emergency braking assistance.
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windscreen and, depending on version, a radar located in the front bumper.



This system does not avoid the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.

It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations.



As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



This system can be deactivated or activated via the **Driving/Vehicle** of the touch screen.



Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating conditions and limits

ESC system in working order.

DSC system activated.

Seat belts fastened for all passengers.

Stabilised speed on unwinding roads.

In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is advised:

- Towing a trailer.
- Carrying long objects on roof bars or roof rack.
- Vehicles with snow chains fitted.
- Before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running.
- Before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop.
- Towed vehicle, engine running.
- When a "space-saver" type spare wheel is fitted (depending on version).
- If the brake lamps are not working.
- Following impact to the windscreen close to the detection camera.



It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. The driver must always stay in control of the vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.



After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Collision Risk Alert

This function warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of a collision with the vehicle in front or with a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This trigger threshold determines the sensitivity with which the function warns of the risk of collision.



The threshold is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

- Select one of the three pre-defined thresholds:
 - "Distant".
 - "Normal".
 - "Close".

The last threshold selected is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert trigger threshold chosen by the driver, several different levels of alert may be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.

The system takes account of the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions and the operation of the vehicle (actions on the pedals, the steering wheel, etc.) to trigger the alert at the best moment.



Level 1 (orange): visual alert only, indicating that the vehicle in front is very close.

The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.



Level 2 (red): visual and audible alert, indicating that a collision is imminent.

The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.



Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.

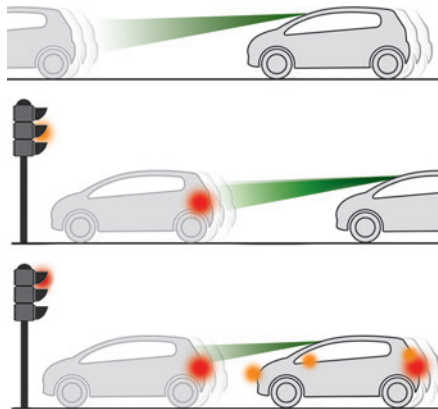
Important: the level 1 alert is not displayed when there is a stationary obstacle or when the "**Close**" trigger threshold has been selected.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics.

This assistance will only be provided if the driver presses the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, intervenes following the alerts if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes. It aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a collision where the driver fails to react.

Operation

The system operates under the following conditions:

- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle is detected.
- The vehicle's speed is between 3 mph and 53 mph (5 km/h and 85 km/h) when a moving vehicle is detected.

 This warning lamp flashes (for approximately 10 seconds) as soon as the function acts on the vehicle's braking. With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed down to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.

With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

 The driver can maintain control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or sharply pressing the accelerator pedal.

 Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal. If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Malfunction

 In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Distraction detection

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

Take a break in case of feeling tired or at least every 2 hours.

Depending on version, the function consists of just the "Coffee Break Alert" system, or of this combined with the "Driver Attention Warning" system.

 These systems are in no way designed to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel. It is the driver's responsibility to stop if feeling tired.

Activation / Deactivation



It is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Coffee Break Alert



The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).

This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging the driver to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.

If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:

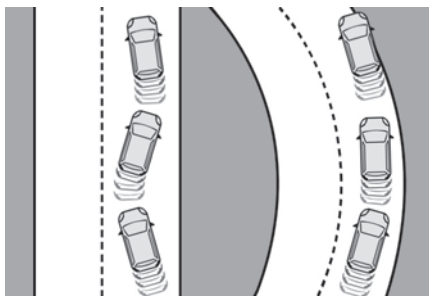
- With the engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes.
- The ignition has been switched off for a few minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is opened.

i As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby.

The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Driver Attention Warning

Depending on version, the "Coffee Break Alert" system is combined with the "Driver Attention Warning" system.



Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen, the system assesses the driver's level of vigilance, fatigue or distraction by identifying variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.

This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h)).

At a first-level alert, the driver is warned by the "Take care!" message, accompanied by an audible signal.

After three first-level alerts, the system triggers a further alert with the message "Dangerous driving: take a break", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.



In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.



The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks);
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected);
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

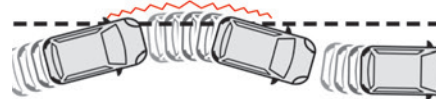
Lane Departure Warning System

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

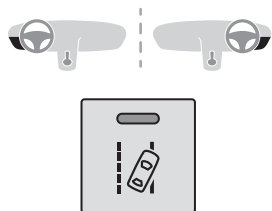
This system, using a camera which recognises solid or broken lines, detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground.

If the driver's attention drops and the speed is higher than 37 mph (60 km/h), the system triggers a warning if there is an unexpected change of direction.

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Activation / Deactivation



► Press this button to deactivate / reactivate the system at any time.

The indicator lamp comes on when the function is activated.

The state of the system stays in the memory when switching off the ignition.

Detection

If an unexpected change of direction is detected, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel accompanied by an audible signal.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is activated and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

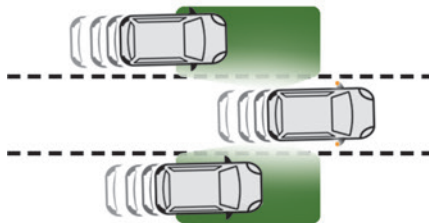
Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel for about 10 seconds then goes out.

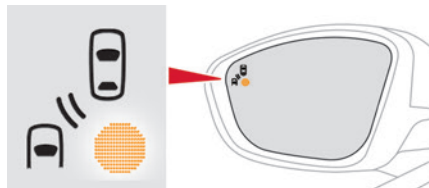
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Blind Spot Monitoring System

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system includes sensors, placed on the sides of the bumpers, and warns the driver of the potentially dangerous presence of another vehicle (car, truck, motorcycle) in the blind spot areas of their vehicle (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision).



The warning is given by a fixed warning lamp that appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- immediately, when being overtaken;
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

Activation / Deactivation

It is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

When the function is activated, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel.

When starting the vehicle, the warning lamp comes on in each mirror to indicate that the system is activated.

The state of the system stays in the memory when switching off the ignition.

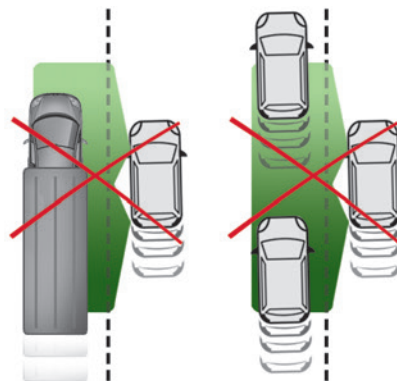
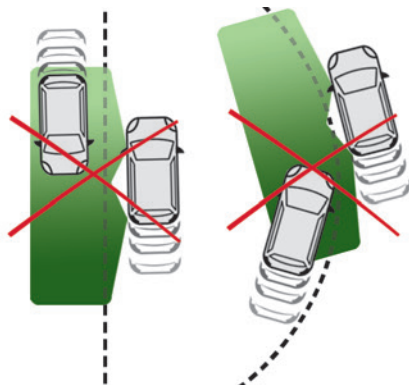
The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by CITROËN.

Conditions for operation

- All vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes.
- The speed of your vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h).
- When overtaking a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When overtaken by a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 16 mph (25 km/h).

- Traffic is flowing normally.
- Overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- Your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.

Operating limits



No alert is triggered in the following conditions:

- In the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.).
- Oncoming traffic.
- Driving on a winding road or a sharp corner.
- When overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) that is detected in the rear blind spot but is also present in the driver's front field of vision.
- When overtaking quickly.
- In very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments in the instrument panel, accompanied

by the Service warning lamp coming on and the display of a message.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

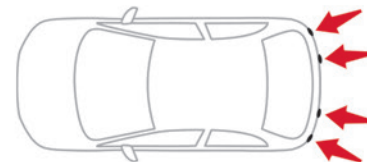
i The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).

In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow. Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the system.

Parking sensors

Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

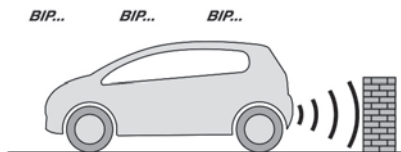


Using sensors located in the bumper, this system signals the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) present in their field of detection.

Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear, which is confirmed by an audible signal. The system is switched off when disengaging reverse gear.

Audible assistance



The system signals the presence of obstacles within the sensors' detection zone.

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

Visual assistance



This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars on the screen that move progressively nearer to the vehicle (green: more distant; yellow: close; red: very close). When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

Deactivation / Activation

It is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

i The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Operating limits

If the boot is heavily loaded, the vehicle may tilt, affecting distance measurements.

Malfunction

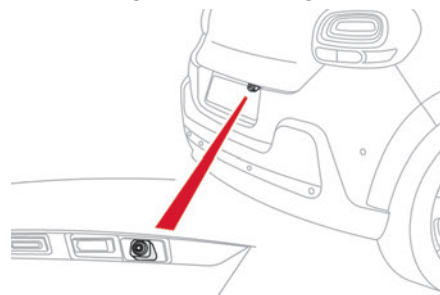


In the event of a malfunction when shifting to reverse, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal (short beep).

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Reversing camera

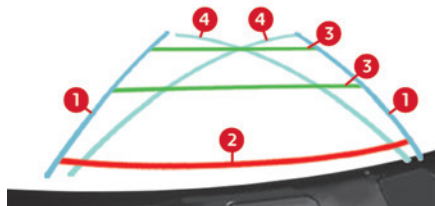
Refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

The image is displayed on the touch screen.

i The reversing camera function may be supplemented by the parking sensors.



The blue lines **1** indicate the general direction of the vehicle (the gap corresponds to the width of your vehicle including the mirrors).

The red line **2** represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

The green lines **3** represent distances of about 1 and 2 metres beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

The turquoise curves **4** show the maximum turning angle in either direction.

It is normal to have a part of the number plate showing at the bottom of the screen.

! Opening the tailgate causes the display to disappear.

i Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

CITROËN prefers TOTAL



FILL UP WITH CONFIDENCE

WITH TOTAL QUARTZ LUBRICANTS

For more than 50 years, TOTAL and CITROËN have shared common values: excellence, creativity and technological innovation.

It is in this same spirit that TOTAL has developed a range of TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants adapted to CITROËN engines, making them ever more fuel efficient and environmentally friendly.

TOTAL and CITROËN test the reliability and performance of their products in motorsport under extreme conditions.

Choose TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants for maintaining your vehicle; they are your assurance of optimum engine life and performance.



Refuelling

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 45 or 47 litres (petrol) or 42 or 50 litres (Diesel).

Reserve level: approximately 5 litres.

Low fuel level



When the low fuel level is reached, one of these warning lamps comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by an onscreen message and an audible signal. When it first comes on, **about 5 litres** of fuel remain.



Depending on equipment, the low fuel level may only be indicated by a red warning lamp.

Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an onscreen message and an audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **0**. You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

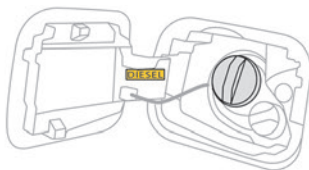


Stop & Start

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

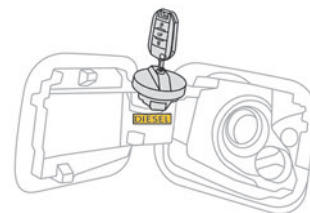
Refuelling

Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge. Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal, resulting from the sealing of the fuel system.



To refuel in complete safety:

- ▶ **You must switch off the engine.**
- ▶ Open the fuel filler flap.
- ▶ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel type for the vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the filler flap).
- ▶ Insert the key in the filler cap then turn it to the left, or turn the filler cap manually to the left (depending on version).



- ▶ Remove the filler cap and hang it on its carrier (on the filler flap).
- ▶ Introduce the filler nozzle and push it in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).
- ▶ Fill the tank.

Do not continue past the third cut-off of the nozzle, as this may cause malfunctions.

- ▶ Refit the filler cap.
- ▶ Turn the key to the right then remove it from the filler cap, or turn the filler cap manually to the right (depending on version).
- ▶ Push the filler flap to close it.



If you have put in the wrong fuel for the vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

The vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.

The filler neck is narrower, admitting unleaded petrol nozzles only.

Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

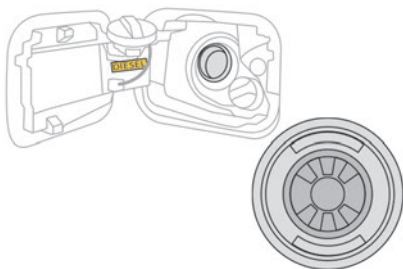
Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on country of sale.)

This mechanical device prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device is visible when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is inserted into the fuel filler neck of a Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

i It remains possible to use a fuel jerrycan to fill the tank.

i Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible. Before travelling abroad, it is advisable to check with a CITROËN dealer if the vehicle is suitable for the distribution equipment of the countries visited.

Compatibility of fuels

E5 **E10**

Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively.

B7 **B10** **B20** **B30**

Diesel fuels conforming to the EN590, EN16734 and EN16709 standards and containing up to 7%, 10%, 20% and 30% fatty acid methyl ester respectively. The use of B20 or B30 fuels, even occasionally, imposes special maintenance conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel conforming to the EN15940 standard.

! The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i The only fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 (petrol) or B715000 (Diesel) standards.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0 °C (+32 °F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could prevent the engine from operating correctly. In these temperature conditions, use winter-type Diesel fuel and keep the fuel tank more than 50 % full.

At temperatures below -15 °C (+5 °F) to avoid problems starting, it is best to park the vehicle under shelter (heated garage).

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For all additional information, consult a dealer.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

! The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

i Take account of the legislation specific to each country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to the vehicle:

Original tyre size	Chain types
185/65 R15	Maximum 9 mm link
195/65 R15	
205/55 R16	
205/50 R17	Cannot be fitted with chains

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installation tips

- To fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of the vehicle.

- Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- Stop the vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

i It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging the vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Towing device

Load distribution

- Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it. Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum load which can be towed must be reduced by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude.

i Use towing devices and their genuine wiring harnesses approved by CITROËN. It is recommended that the installation be

performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically deactivated if an approved towing system is used.

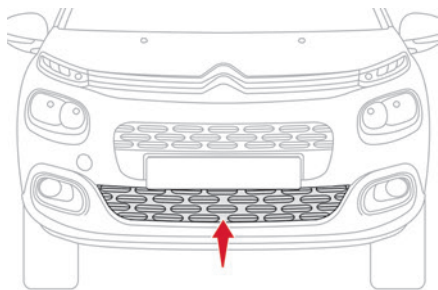
! Observe the maximum authorised towable weight, indicated on the vehicle's registration certificate, the manufacturer's label as well as in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (towball) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).

! Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.

Blanking plug

If your vehicle is equipped with a blanking plug, it must be removed before towing.



It is located behind the lower air intake grille. Contact your CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have it removed.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as air conditioning, heated rear screen, etc.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Energy economy mode

This system manages the duration of use of certain functions, in order to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery with the ignition off.

After switching off the engine, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers and the dipped beam headlamps or courtesy lamps, for a combined duration of approximately 40 minutes.

Switching to this mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

i If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system.

Exiting the mode

These functions are automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used.

To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- For less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes.
- For more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes.

Let the engine run for the specified duration to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.

To recharge the battery, avoid repeatedly or continuously restarting the engine.

! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.

For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Roof bars

! As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for the vehicle. Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

! Maximum load distributed over the roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm: **70 kg**.

As this value may change, please verify the maximum load quoted in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

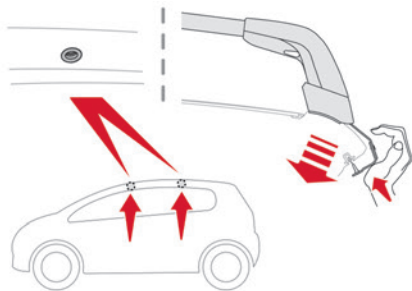
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.

Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

! **Recommendations**
Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.

Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load firmly.
Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.
Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip.
Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

Fitting directly to the roof



You must only attach the transverse bars to the four fixing points located on the roof frame. These points are concealed by the vehicle doors when the doors are closed.
The roof bar fixings have a stud which must be inserted into the opening of each fixing point.

Bonnet

! Stop & Start

Before doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

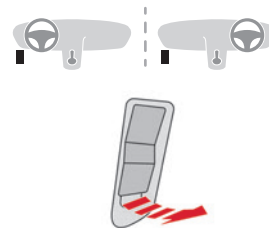


i The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents the bonnet being opened when the left-hand front door is closed.

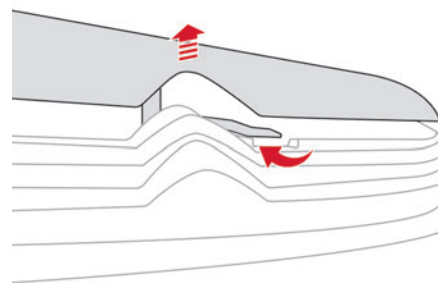
! When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.
When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

! **Cooling of the engine when stopped**
The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!

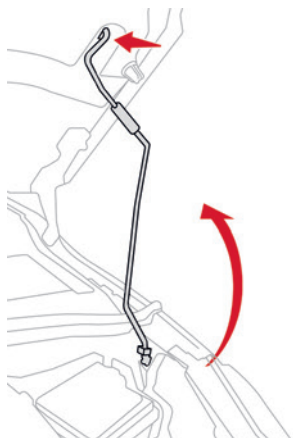
Opening



- ▶ Open the left-hand front door.
- ▶ Pull the interior release lever, located at the bottom of the door frame, towards you.



- ▶ Lift the exterior safety catch and raise the bonnet.



- Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

Closing

- Hold the bonnet and pull out the stay from the support slot.
- Clip the stay in its housing.
- Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
- Pull on the bonnet to check that it is locked correctly.

! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is strongly

recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

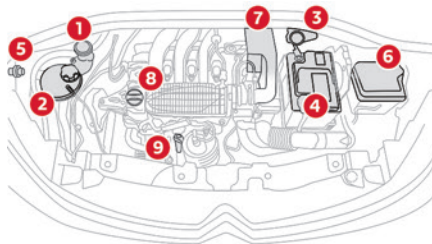
Engine compartment

The engine represented is an example given for illustration purposes only.

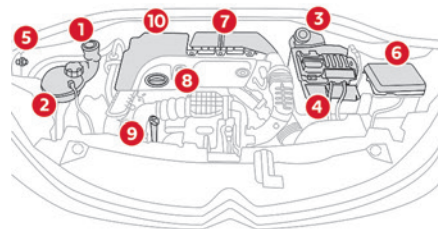
The locations of the following elements may vary:

- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.

Petrol engine



Diesel engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. Air filter
8. Engine oil filler cap
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Priming pump*

! The Diesel fuel system operates under very high pressure.

All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

* Depending on engine.

Checking levels

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

♻️ Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine oil



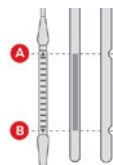
The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge), or using the dipstick. It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

! In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Checking using the dipstick

For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.

- ▶ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- ▶ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, non-fluffy cloth.
- ▶ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



A = MAX

B = MIN

Do not start the engine if the level is:

- above mark **A**: contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- below mark **B**: top up the engine oil immediately.

i Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ▶ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ▶ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ▶ Add more oil if necessary.
- ▶ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

i During the 30 minutes after topping up the oil, the check performed with the oil

level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid.

Brake fluid



The level of this fluid should be close to the **"MAX"** mark. If not, check the brake pad wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.



Clean the cap before removing it to refill.
Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

Engine coolant



It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A low level presents a risk of serious damage to the engine.

The level of this fluid should be close to the **"MAX"** mark but should never exceed it.

If the level is close to or below the **"MIN"** mark, it is essential to top up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of this fluid is regulated by the fan.

As the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

In order to avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.
Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.



Cooling of the engine when stopped
The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!

Screenwash fluid



Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a ready-to-use mixture.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a liquid containing an agent to prevent freezing must be used which is appropriate for the prevailing conditions, in order to protect the elements of the system (pump, tank, ducts, jets, etc.).



Filling with pure water is prohibited under all circumstances (risk of freezing, limestone deposits, etc.).

Diesel fuel additive (Diesel with particle filter)



On reaching the minimum level in the particle filter additive tank, this warning lamp comes on fixed, accompanied by an audible warning and a message warning that the additive level is too low.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

AdBlue (BlueHDi)

An alert is triggered when the reserve level is reached.

For more information on the **AdBlue** range indicators, refer to the corresponding section.

To avoid the vehicle being immobilised in accordance with regulations, you must top up the AdBlue tank.

For more information on the **Supply of AdBlue**, refer to the corresponding section.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification. In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

i For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Passenger compartment filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere,

city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary.**

i A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Air filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary.**

Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)



When the particle filter is approaching saturation, this warning lamp comes on temporarily, accompanied by a message warning of the risk of filter clogging. As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

i If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level. For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

i Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust while accelerating. This has no impact on the vehicle's behaviour or the environment.

New vehicle

During the first few particle filter regeneration operations, you may notice a "burning" smell. This is perfectly normal.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services. Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

i After washing the vehicle, moisture, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the

brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Gently dab the brakes to dry and defrost them.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual parking brake



If you notice excessive brake lever travel or decreased effectiveness, the parking brake must be adjusted, even between two services.

This system must be checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Wheels and tyres



The inflation pressure of all tyres, including the spare wheel, must be checked on "cold" tyres.

The pressures indicated on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at over 31 mph (50 km/h), add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.



Under-inflation increases fuel consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressure causes premature wear on tyres and

has an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of an accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. It is recommended to regularly check the condition of the tyres (tread and sidewalls) and wheel rims as well as the presence of the valves. When the wear indicators no longer appear set back from the tread, the depth of the grooves is less than 1.6 mm; it is imperative to replace the tyres.

Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.

Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of its Diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel Particle Filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR System

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of the nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® is contained in a **special tank** holding about 15 litres.

Its capacity allows a driving range of approximately 11,200 miles (18,000 km), **which may vary considerably** depending on your driving style.

An alert system is triggered once the reserve level is reached: it is then possible to drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty and the vehicle blocked.



For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, or the **Indicators**, please refer to the corresponding sections.



Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.

If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from the vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: the vehicle becomes polluting.

In the event of a confirmed SCR system malfunction, it is essential to visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. After 680

miles (1,100 km), a device is automatically activated to prevent the engine from starting. In both cases, a range indicator indicates the distance that can be travelled before the vehicle is stopped.

Freezing of the AdBlue®

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.

The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Supply of AdBlue®

It is recommended that the AdBlue® be topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

 For the correct operation of the SCR system:

- Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
- Never transfer AdBlue® to another container as it would lose its purity.
- Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

It is possible to obtain AdBlue® from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

 Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above +25°C. Containers should be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight. Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.

If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out at room temperature.

 Never store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.

Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This fluid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).

In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In the event of contact with the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. Seek medical attention if you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation.

If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.

In certain conditions (high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapours have an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

 Store AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container.

Procedure

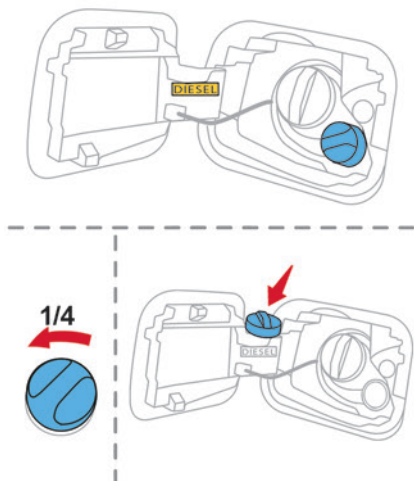
Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface. In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11 °C. Otherwise, the AdBlue® may be frozen and therefore cannot be poured into its tank. Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

 Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

 If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the bodywork, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth. If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

 **Important: in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue, it is essential to wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle, introducing the key into the ignition switch, or introducing the key of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system into the passenger compartment.** Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

- Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch to switch off the engine.
- or
- With Keyless Entry and Starting, press the **"START/STOP"** button to switch off the engine.



- With the vehicle unlocked and the fuel filler flap open, turn the blue cap of the AdBlue® tank a quarter turn anti-clockwise.

Filling up

- With a bottle or container of AdBlue®: after checking the expiry date, read carefully the instructions on the label before pouring the

contents of the bottle or container into the vehicle's AdBlue tank.

- With an AdBlue® pump: introduce the nozzle and fill the tank until the automatic cut-off of the nozzle.

- ! In order not to overfill the AdBlue® tank:
 - Add between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.
 - Stop after the nozzle's first automatic cut-out, if you are refilling at a service station.

- ! If the AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible" message – it is essential to add at least 5 litres.

After refilling

- Refit the blue cap to the tank filler and turn it clockwise as far as it will go (one sixth of a turn).
- Close the fuel filler flap.

- ! Do not dispose of AdBlue® bottles or containers in the household waste. Place them in a container reserved for this purpose or take them back to where you purchased them.

Advice on care and maintenance

General recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging your vehicle.

Exterior

- ! Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment, due to the risk of damaging electrical components. Do not wash the vehicle in strong sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

- i When washing the vehicle at an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, remove the electronic key and deactivate the "hands-free" function ("Hands-Free Tailgate Access").

When using a pressure washer, hold the lance at least 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals). Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paint (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar).

If justified by the environment, clean the vehicle more frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial

estates) and mud (in wet or cold areas). These substances can be highly corrosive. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop if you require advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers). Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior

! When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure washer to clean the interior.

Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage if they come into contact with the controls in the dashboard and centre console. Take care!

Bodywork

High-gloss paint

! Do not use abrasive products or solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork.

Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains. Risk of scratching the paintwork!

Do not apply polish in strong sunshine, or to plastic or rubber parts.

i Use a soft sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.

Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.

Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.

Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

Decals

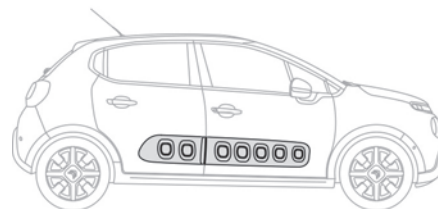
(Depending on version)

! Do not use a high pressure washer to clean the vehicle. Risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

i Use a high-flow hose at a temperature between 25°C and 40°C.

Sweep the jet of water across the surface to be cleaned, perpendicular to it.

Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.



i Maintenance of AIRBUMP®

The AIRBUMP® do not require any specific maintenance.

Clean them using water or one of the

products available from a CITROËN dealer.

To protect the AIRBUMP® against premature ageing, do not use polish.

AIRBUMP® protectors

Made from TPU (thermoplastic polyurethane) and incorporating air-filled bumps, they provide protection against impacts.

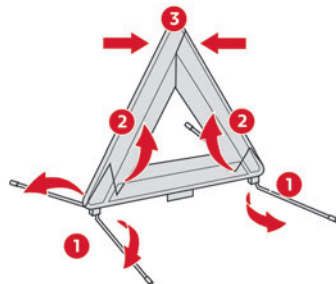
Located on the sides of your vehicle, they protect the bodywork by resisting everyday bumps and scrapes caused by parking posts, opening doors, scratches, etc.

Warning triangle

As a safety precaution, before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

The triangle can be stored on the back panel of the boot, attached with straps.

Assembling and placing the triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above.

For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.

- Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

With Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.

Before starting to prime the system, it is essential to put at least 5 litres of Diesel into the fuel tank.

i For more information on **Refuelling** and on **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, please refer to the corresponding section.

For non-BlueHDi versions, the fuel system components are located in the engine compartment, possibly under the removable cover.

i For more information on the **Engine compartment**, in particular the location of these components under the bonnet, please refer to the corresponding section.

With 1.6 BlueHDi (Euro 6.1)

- Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
 - Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
 - Repeat the operation 10 times.
 - Operate the starter motor to start the engine.
- If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not keep trying, but restart the procedure.

With 1.5 BlueHDi (Euro 6.2/6.3)

- Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
 - Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
 - Operate the starter motor to start the engine.
- If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not keep trying, but restart the procedure.

Non-BlueHDi engines

- Open the bonnet and then, if necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.



- Operate the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (resistance may be felt at the first press).

- Operate the starter motor to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).

- If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again, then the starter motor.

- Put the cover back in place and clip it in, then close the bonnet.

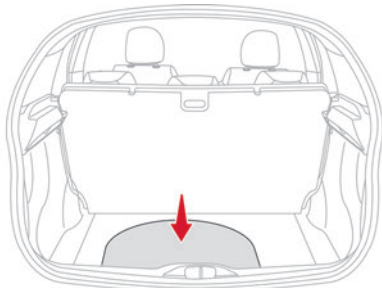
Tool kit

Set of tools supplied with the vehicle.

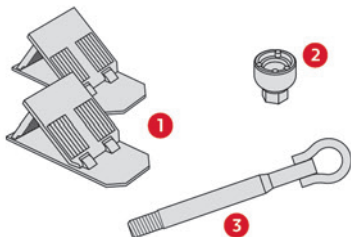
Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:

- Temporary puncture repair kit.
- Spare wheel.

Accessing the tools



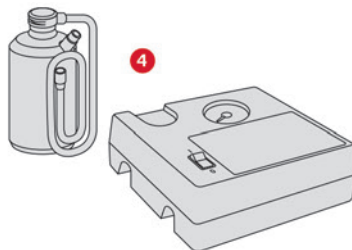
List of tools



1. Chocks to immobilise the vehicle (depending on equipment)
2. Socket for the wheel security bolts (located in the glove box) (depending on equipment)
For adapting the wheelbrace to the special 'security' bolts.
3. Removable towing eye

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

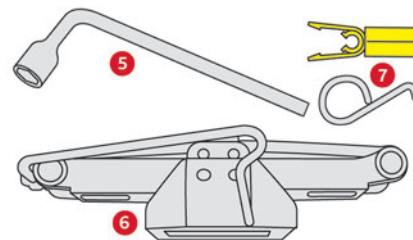
With temporary puncture repair kit



4. 12 V compressor with a cartridge of sealant and a speed limit sticker
For temporary repair of a tyre and to adjust the tyre pressure.

For more information about the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

With spare wheel



5. Wheelbrace
For removing the wheel trim and the wheel bolts.
6. Jack with integrated handle
To raise the vehicle.
7. Wheel bolt cap removal tool (depending on equipment)
For removing the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.

For further information on the **Spare wheel**, please refer to the corresponding section.

! These tools are specific to the vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment.
Do not use them for any other purpose.

! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with the vehicle.

If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the one that was intended by the manufacturer.

The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.

The jack does not require any maintenance.

Temporary puncture repair kit

i Scan the QR Code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows you to carry out a **temporary repair** of the tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures located on the tyre tread.

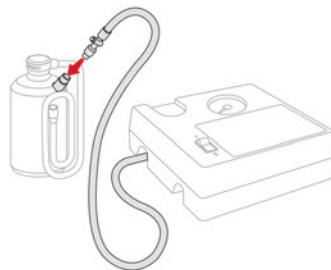
i The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor to the 2 V power supply for long enough to repair a tyre after a puncture.

i For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

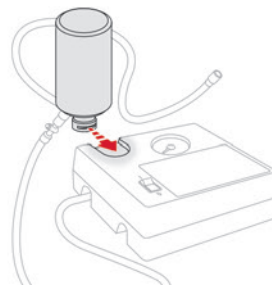
Repair procedure

! Do not remove any foreign bodies (e.g. nail, screw) which have penetrated into the tyre.

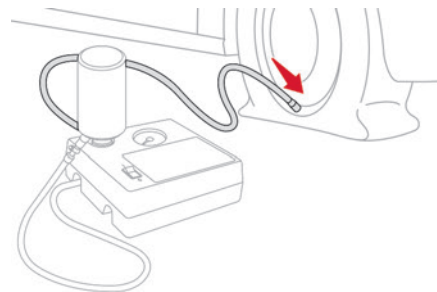
- ▶ Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
- ▶ Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country of driving.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- ▶ Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.



- ▶ Turn the bottle of sealant over and secure it in the notch provided on the compressor.
- ▶ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



- ▶ Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.
- ▶ Check that the compressor switch is in position "O".
- ▶ Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.

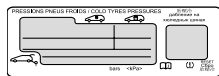
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.



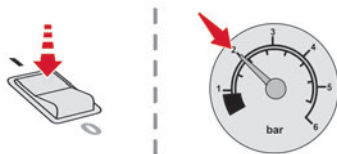
- Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind the driver that a wheel is in temporary use.

i The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



- Switch on the ignition.



- Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to position "I" until the tyre pressure reaches 2 bar. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

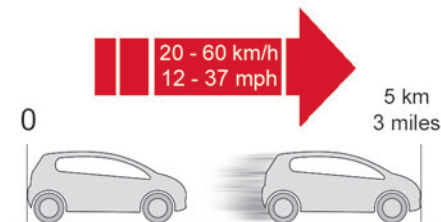
! If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- Move the switch to position "O".
- Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Refit the cap on the valve.
- Remove the kit.
- Remove and store the bottle of sealant.

! The sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.

Keep this product out of the reach of children. The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.

After use, do not discard the bottle in standard waste, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site. Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



- Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)) to plug the puncture.
- Stop to check the repair **and the tyre pressure** using the kit.

! With a tyre repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km). Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the tyre changed.

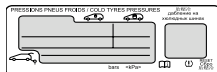
Checking / adjusting tyre pressures

The compressor can be used, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

- Remove the valve cap from the tyre and keep it in a clean place.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.

- ▶ Check that the compressor switch is in position "O".
- ▶ Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
- ▶ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ▶ Switch on the ignition.

i The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



- ▶ Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "I" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

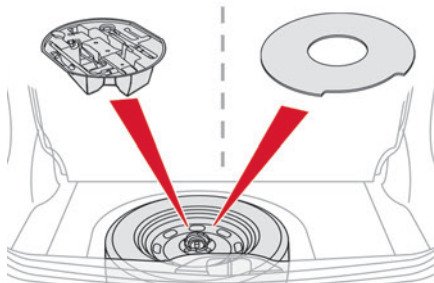
! If after 7 minutes the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, the tyre is damaged; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ▶ Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position "O".
- ▶ Remove the kit and stow it.

! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system. For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Spare wheel

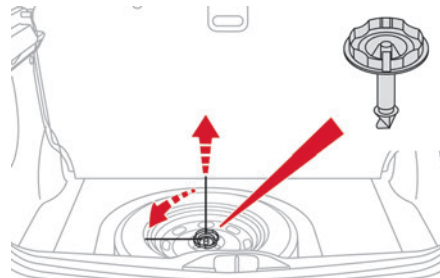
Access to the spare wheel



The spare wheel is installed in the boot, under the floor.

Depending on engine, the spare wheel is a standard wheel or the space-saver type (BlueHDi).

Removing the spare wheel



- ▶ Unclip the tool storage box (standard spare wheel).
- ▶ Slacken the central nut.
- ▶ Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).
- ▶ Lift the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ▶ Take the wheel out of the boot.

i If there is no wheel in the well, the fastening device (nut and bolt) cannot be refitted.

Removing a wheel

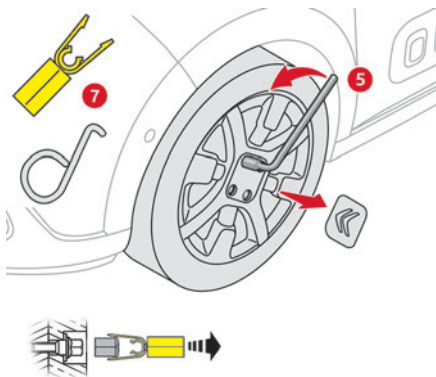
! **Parking the vehicle**
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not obstruct traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery. With a manual gearbox, engage first gear to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake,

unless it is programmed to be in automatic mode, and switch off the ignition. With an automatic gearbox, select mode **P** to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed to be in automatic mode, and switch off the ignition. Check for the fixed illumination of the parking brake indicator lamps in the instrument panel. The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe. If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed. Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

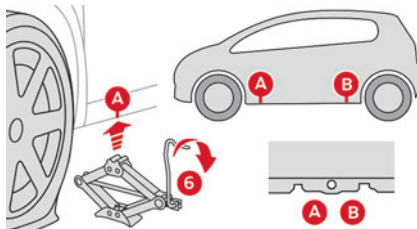
i Wheel with wheel trim

When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.

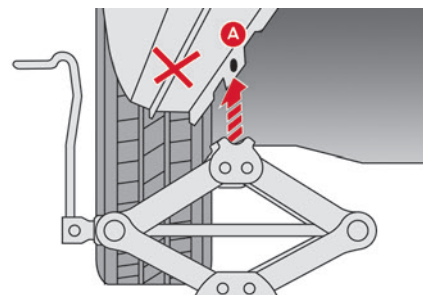
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.



- Remove the bolt cover(s) using tool 7 (depending on version).
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace 5 only.

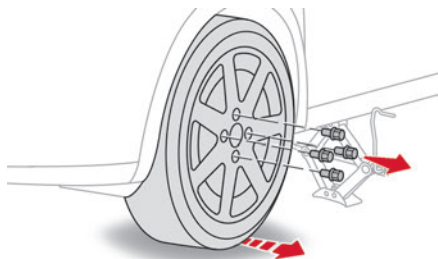


- Place the foot of jack 6 on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



- Extend jack 6 until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**; contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse - risk of injury! Take care to position the jack strictly at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area of the vehicle. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing - risk of injury!

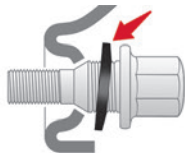


- ▶ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- ▶ Remove the wheel.

i Stowing the damaged wheel

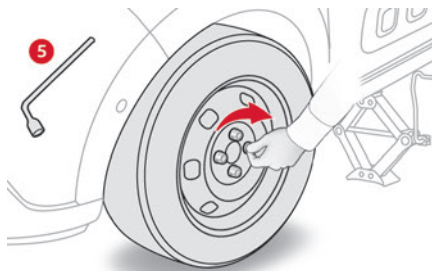
- ▶ To stow an **alloy wheel**, first remove the wheel trim from the centre of the wheel so that the fastening device (nut and bolt) can be put in place.
- ▶ In the case of a **"space saver" type spare wheel**, the damaged wheel cannot be stowed under the floor. It must be placed in the boot; use a cover to protect the inside of the boot.

Fitting a wheel

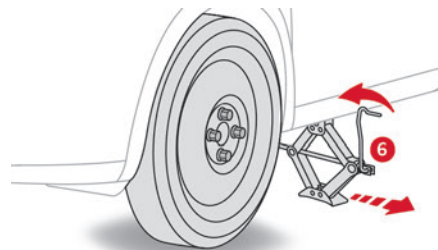


i Fitting a steel or 'space-saver' type spare wheel

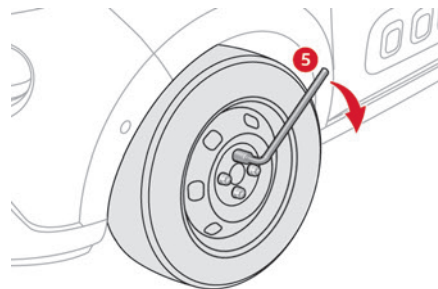
If the vehicle is equipped with alloy wheels, the washers do not make contact with the steel or 'space-saver' type spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical surface of each bolt.



- ▶ Fit the wheel on the hub.
- ▶ Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- ▶ Pre-tighten the bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.

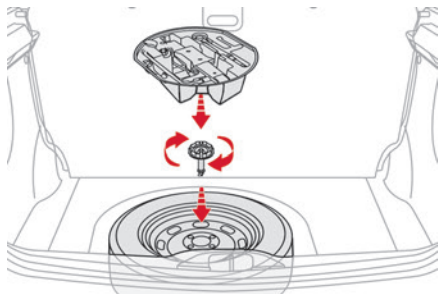


- ▶ Lower the vehicle again fully.
- ▶ Fold jack **6** and remove it.



- ▶ Tighten the bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
- ▶ Refit the bolt covers to each of the bolts (depending on equipment).
- ▶ Store the tools.

Putting the spare wheel back in place



- Put the spare wheel back in place in its housing.
- Slacken the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
- Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
- Tighten the central nut sufficiently to retain the wheel correctly.
- Depending on version, put the tool box back in place in the middle of the wheel and clip it in place.

After changing a wheel



! With a "space-saver" type spare wheel

Deactivate certain driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, etc.).

Do not exceed the maximum authorised speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).

Driving with more than one "space-saver" type spare wheel is prohibited.

! Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tightness of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked.

Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Changing a bulb

i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

! The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

- **Do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products.**

– Use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.

– When using a high-pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the headlamps, lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

! Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the headlamp /

lamp has been switched off for several minutes - risk of serious burns!

Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers; use a lint-free cloth.

It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.

Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb of the same type and specification. To avoid lighting imbalance, replace the bulbs in pairs.

i Refitting the lamp units

Perform the operations in the reverse order to dismantling.

! Opening the bonnet / Accessing the bulbs

With the engine warm, proceed with caution - risk of burns!

Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan - risk of strangulation!



i Halogen bulbs (Hx)

To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

Light-emitting diode (LED) headlamps and lamps

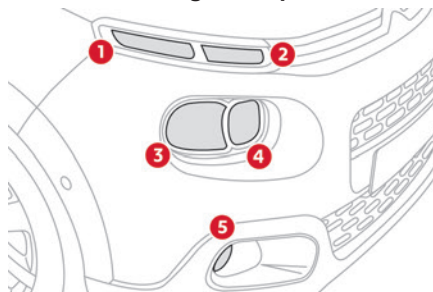
Depending on version, the affected types of headlamps / lamps are:

– Daytime running lamps / sidelamps.

! For the replacement of this type of bulb, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not touch the "Full LED" technology headlamps - risk of electrocution!

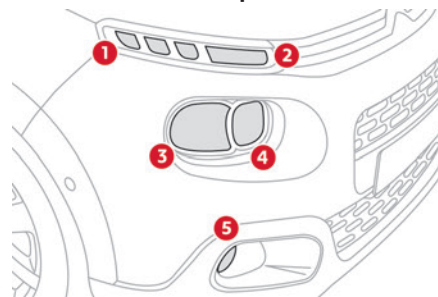
Front lamps

Model with halogen lamps



1. Daytime running lamps / Sidelamps (W21/5W)
2. Direction indicators (PY21W)
3. Dipped beam headlamps (H7)
4. Main beam headlamps (H7)
5. Front foglamps (PSX24W)

Model with LED lamps



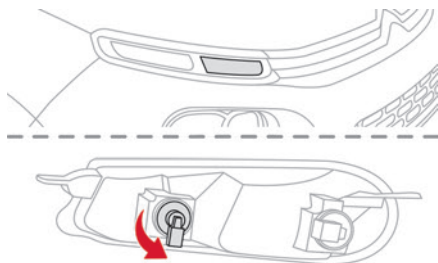
1. Daytime running lamps / Sidelamps (LED)
2. Direction indicators (PY21W)
3. Dipped beam headlamps (H7)
4. Main beam headlamps (H7)
5. Front foglamps (PSX24W)

Daytime running lamps / sidelamps

- Turn the bulb holder an eighth of a turn anti-clockwise and remove it.
- Remove the bulb and replace it.

Direction indicators

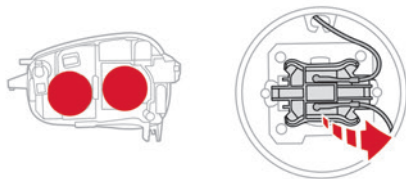
i Rapid flashing of a direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.



- Turn the bulb holder a eighth of a turn anti-clockwise and remove it.
- Remove the bulb and replace it.

i Amber coloured bulbs must be replaced by bulbs with identical specifications and colour.

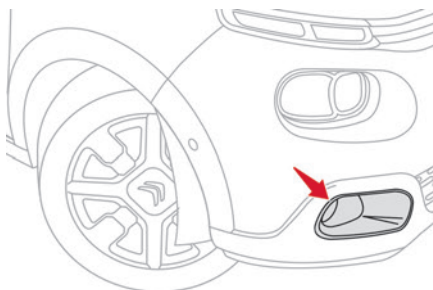
Main / Dipped beam headlamps



- Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Remove the bulb and replace it.

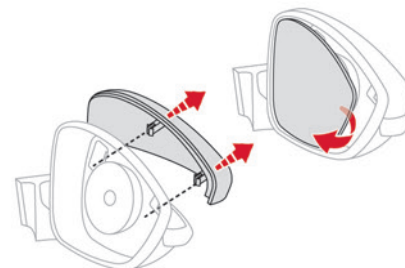
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order, directing the bulb's positioning lug **upwards** (dipped beam) / **downwards** (main beam).

Front foglamps

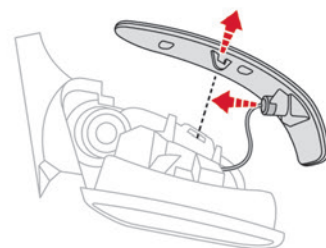


For the replacement of these bulbs, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Integrated direction indicator side repeaters



- Insert a flat screwdriver between the door mirror and its base.
- Tilt the screwdriver and use it as a lever to extract the mirror.
- Unclip the shell of the door mirror by pressing on the two retaining clips.

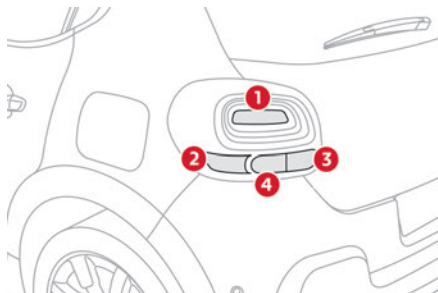


- Press the central tab and remove the side repeater.

- Pull out the bulb holder and replace the faulty bulb.

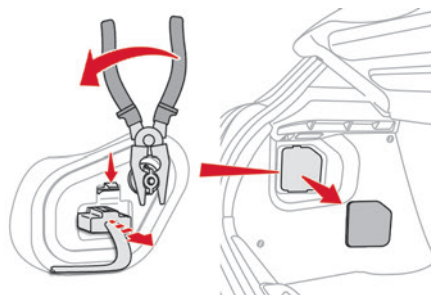
i For the replacement of these bulbs, you can also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Rear lamps



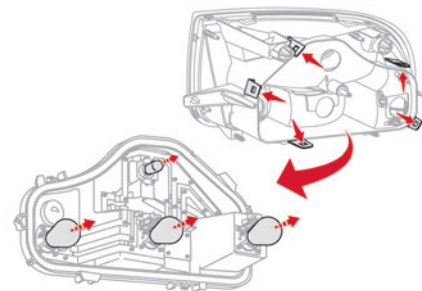
1. Sidelamps (R10W)
2. Brake lamps (P21W)
3. Direction indicators (PY21W)
4. Reversing lamp (P21W) or Foglamp (PR21W)

Changing bulbs



These bulbs are changed from inside the boot.

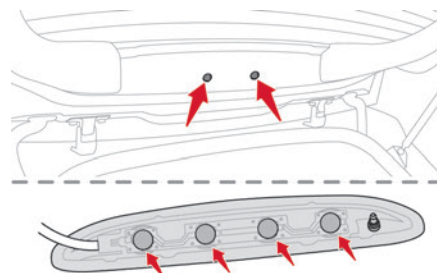
- Open the boot.
- Remove the access flap on the corresponding side trim.
- Disconnect the lamp unit connector.
- Unscrew the nut and remove it. **Be careful not to drop it inside the wing.**
- Unclip the lamp unit and carefully extract it pulling straight towards the outside. A standard pair of pliers or the wheelbrace (depending on equipment) may be necessary to remove the nut.



- Remove the retaining tabs from the bulb holder and remove it.
- Turn the bulb a quarter turn and replace it.

i Make sure to engage the lamp unit in its guides while keeping it in line with the vehicle. Tighten sufficiently to ensure sealing, but without damaging the lamp unit.

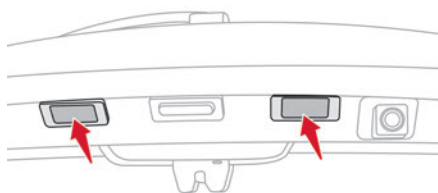
Third brake lamp (4 T10 W5W bulbs)



- ▶ Open the boot, unclip the plastic covers.
- ▶ Push the two lugs with a screwdriver.
- ▶ Remove the lamp unit from outside of the tailgate.
- ▶ Disconnect the connector.
- ▶ Turn the bulb holder corresponding to the faulty bulb a quarter turn and pull it out.
- ▶ Remove the bulb and replace it.

To refit, perform these operations in reverse order, checking that the screenwash fluid nozzle is on the left-hand side.

Number plate lamps (W5W)



To facilitate removal, perform this procedure with the tailgate half-open.

- ▶ Insert a thin screwdriver into the cut-out outside the lens.
- ▶ Lift it up to unclip it.
- ▶ Remove the lens.
- ▶ Replace the faulty bulb.

To refit, press the lens to clip it in.

! To change the bulb within a few minutes of switching off the ignition, take care not to touch the exhaust - risk of burns!

Interior lighting

Courtesy lamp (W5W)

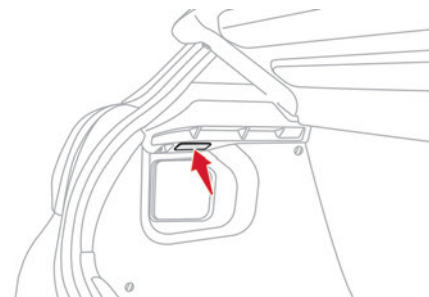


- ▶ Using a thin, flap tip screwdriver, unclip the entire console surrounding the courtesy lamp.
- ▶ Remove the defective bulb and replace it.
- ▶ Fit the console back into place around the courtesy lamp and clip it correctly.

Courtesy lamp with LEDs

For the replacement of LEDs, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Boot (W5W)

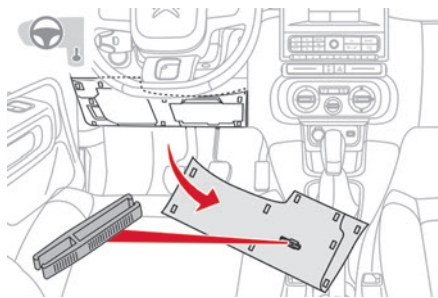


- ▶ Unclip the unit by pushing the base from behind.
- ▶ Pull the bulb out and replace it.
- ▶ Put the unit back in place.

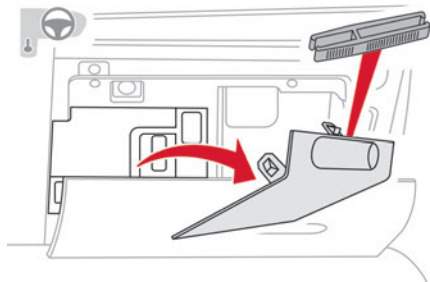
Changing a fuse

Access to tooling

The extraction tweezers are fitted to the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.



- ▶ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
- ▶ Disengage the cover completely and turn it over.
- ▶ Remove the tweezers from the back of the cover.



The extraction tweezers are fitted to the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.

- ▶ Open the glove box lid.
- ▶ Unclip the fusebox protection cover.

- ▶ Disengage the cover completely and turn it over.
- ▶ Remove the tweezers from the back of the cover.

Changing a fuse

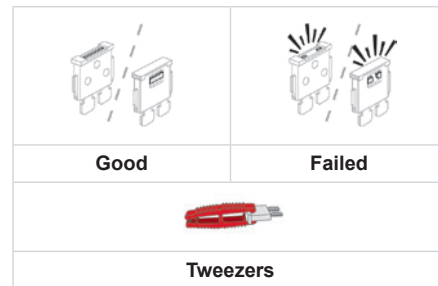
Before changing a fuse:

- ▶ Identify the cause of the fault and fix it.
 - ▶ Stop all power consumption.
 - ▶ Immobilise the vehicle and switch the ignition off.
 - ▶ Identify the defective fuse using the current allocation tables and diagrams.
- To replace a fuse, it is essential to:
- ▶ Use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
 - ▶ Always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); use of a different rating may cause malfunctions - risk of fire!

If the fault recurs after replacing a fuse, have the electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The fuse allocation tables and the corresponding diagrams are available from a CITROËN dealer or from a qualified workshop.

! The replacement of a fuse not shown in the allocation tables may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



i Installing electrical accessories

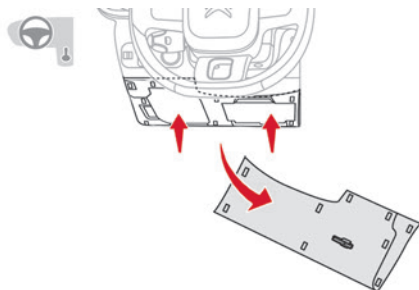
Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.

Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! CITROËN will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

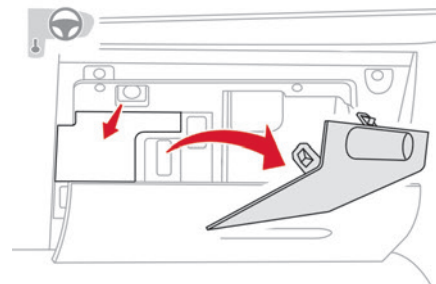
Fuses in the dashboard

Access to the fuses



The 2 fuseboxes are located in the lower part of the dashboard, below the steering wheel.

- Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.

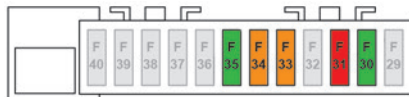


The 2 fuseboxes are located in the lower part of the dashboard, in the glove box.

- Open the glove box.
- Unclip the fusebox protection cover.

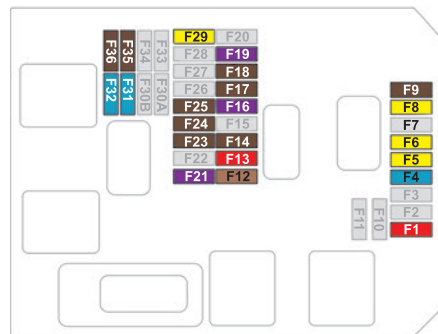
Fuse tables

Upper fusebox



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F31	10	Heated door mirrors.
F33	40	Front electric window controls.
F34	40	Rear electric windows.
F35	30	Front heated seats.

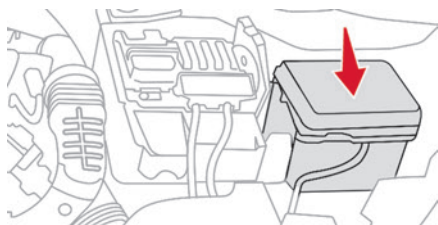
Lower fusebox



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	10	Door mirror adjustment
F10(+)- F11(Gnd)	30	Door and fuel filler flap (depending on engine) locking/unlocking.
F13	10	Air conditioning.
F14	5	Alarm.
F18	5	Air conditioning.
F29	20	Telematic audio system.
F31	15	Audio system (accessory).
F32	15	Front 12 V socket.
F35	5	Additional heater (depending on equipment).
F36	5	Front map reading lamp.
F4	15	Horn.

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F6(+) - F5(Gnd)	20	Front and rear screenwash pump.
F8	20	Rear wiper.

Fuses in the engine compartment



The fusebox is located in the engine compartment, near the battery.

Accessing the fuses

- Unclip the cover.
- Replace the fuse.
- After the operation, close the cover very carefully to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.

Table of fuses



Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	40	Air conditioning.
F16	20	Front foglamp.
F18	10	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F19	10	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F25	40	Trailer attachment pre-equipment.
F29	40	Windscreen wipers.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

General points

Lead-acid starter batteries



Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.

They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.

Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

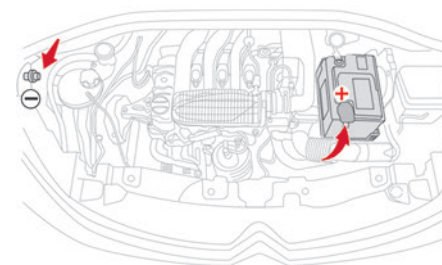


Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.

All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.

Wash your hands afterwards.

Access to the battery



The battery is located under the bonnet.

For access to the (+) terminal:

- unlock the bonnet by activating the internal control, then the external control,
- lift the bonnet, then hold it in place with its prop.

(+) Positive terminal.

It has a quick-release clamp.

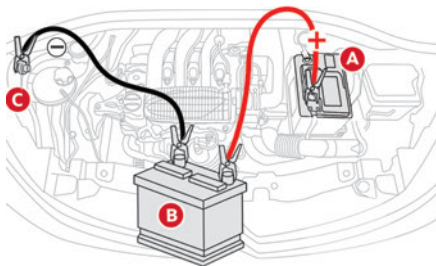
(-) Negative terminal.

As the battery's negative terminal is not accessible, a remote earth point is placed on the structure of the front right wing.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a backup battery (external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or a battery booster.

- ❗ Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
- Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
- Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
- The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
- Switch off all the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
- Make sure that the jump leads are not close to moving parts of the engine (fan, belts, etc.).
- Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



- ▶ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
 - ▶ Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow) then to the positive terminal (+) of backup battery **B** or the booster.
 - ▶ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of backup battery **B** or the booster (or an earth point on the other vehicle).
 - ▶ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
 - ▶ Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
 - ▶ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine turn.
- If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- ▶ Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.
- ▶ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ▶ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- using the vehicle mainly for short journeys;
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

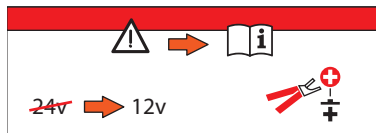
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- ❗ To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).
- ▶ Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ▶ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ▶ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- ▶ Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
 - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
 - the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ▶ At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.



! If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible

damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

! Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and that the container has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

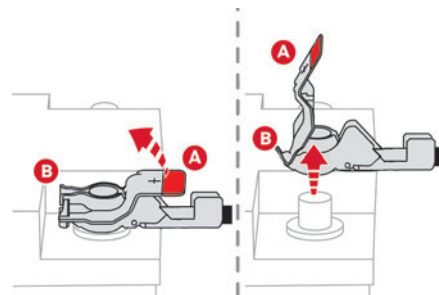
Before disconnecting the battery:

- ▶ close all openings (doors, boot, windows),
- ▶ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.),
- ▶ switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

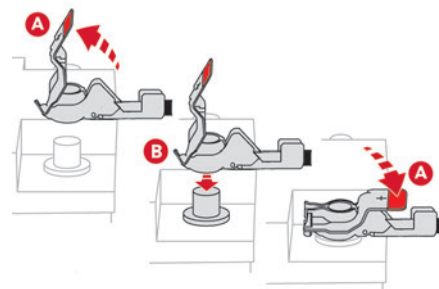
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- ▶ Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
- ▶ Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ▶ Raise the lever **A** fully.
- ▶ Refit the open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ▶ Push the clamp **B** fully down.
- ▶ Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.

! Do not force the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

After reconnection

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.

If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the relevant section, reset certain equipment:

- Remote control key or electronic key (depending on version).
- Sunroof and electric sun blind.
- Electric windows.
- Date and time.

– Preset radio stations.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.

In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Towing

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using the towing eye.

i General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; ropes and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

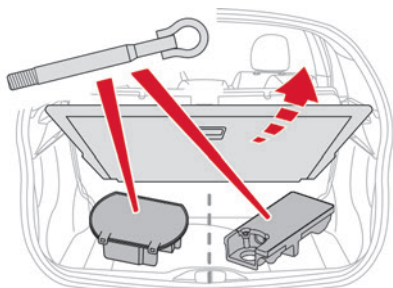
! A professional recovery service must be called if:

- broken down on a motorway or main road;
- not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake;
- not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running;
- towing with only two wheels on the ground;
- four-wheel drive vehicle;
- no approved towbar available.

Type of vehicle (engine / gearbox)gearbox	Towing constraints			
	Font wheels on the ground	Rear wheels on the ground	Flatbed	4 wheels on the ground with towbar
Internal combustion / Manual	✓	✓	✓	✓
Internal combustion / Automatic	✗	✓	✓	✗

i In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles (excluding manual gearbox).

Accessing the tools

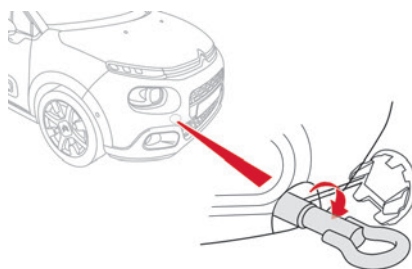


The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.

For access:

- ▶ Open the boot.
- ▶ Lift up the floor and remove it.
- ▶ Remove the towing eye from its housing.

Towing your vehicle



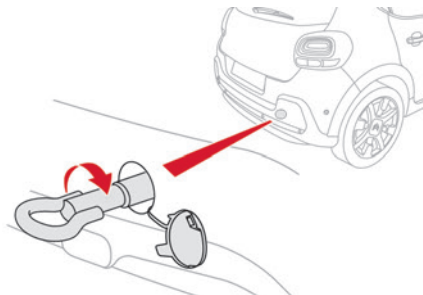
- ▶ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at its left-hand side.
- ▶ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ▶ Install the towbar.
- ▶ With a manual gearbox, move the gear lever into neutral.

- ▶ With an automatic gearbox, move the gear selector into position **N**.

! Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission, etc.) and to the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

- ▶ Unlock the steering by turning the ignition key one notch and release the parking brake.
- ▶ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ▶ Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle



- On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully, until it reaches a stop.
- Install the tow bar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Set off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

i The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW (Gross Train Weight) values and the towable loads listed are valid for a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towable load must be reduced by steps of 10% for each additional 1,000 metres.

The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

! When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

! Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.

When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

i If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine is allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

Engines and towed loads - PETROL

Engines	PureTech 68 BVM5	PureTech 82 BVM5	PureTech 110 S&S BVM6	PureTech 110 S&S EAT6
Gearboxes	Manual 5-speed	Manual 5-speed	Manual 6-speed	Automatic 6-speed
Codes	EB2FB - MA	EB2F - MA EB2FA - MA - STTd	EB2ADT - MB6 - STTd	EB2ADT - AT6III - STTd
Model codes Wheel 640 = /A... Wheel 620 = /B...	SXHMP6/B0 - SXHMP6/A0 SXHMP6/A0	SXHMZ6/... B0 - B1 - A0 - B0M - A0M - A0G - A1G - B0G - B1G SXHMRP	SXHNPS	SXHNPN
Cubic capacity (cc)	1199	1199	1199	1,199
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	50	60 / 61	81	81
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	450	450	600	450
Unbraked trailer (kg)	450	450	450	450
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	46	46	46	46

Engines	PureTech 83 BVM5	PureTech 110 S&S BVM6	PureTech 110 S&S EAT6
Gearboxes	Manual 5-speed	Manual 6-speed	Automatic 6-speed
Codes	EB2FA - MA - STTd	EB2ADT - MB6 - STTd	EB2ADT - AT6III - STTd
Model codes Wheel 640 = /A... Wheel 620 = /B...	SXHMRV SYHMRV SZHMRV	SXHNPU	SXHNPY
Cubic capacity (cc)	1199	1199	1,199

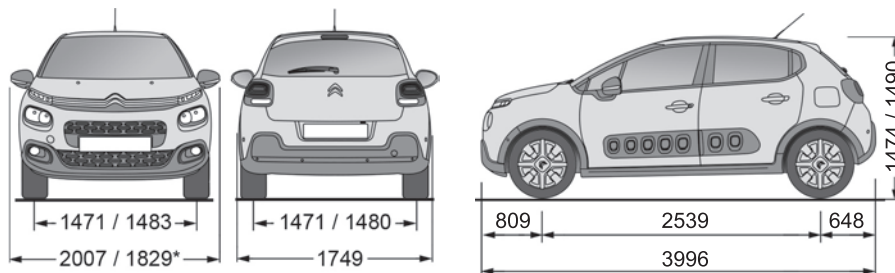
Engines	PureTech 83 BVM5	PureTech 110 S&S BVM6	PureTech 110 S&S EAT6
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	60	81	81
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	450	600	450
Unbraked trailer (kg)	450	450	450
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	46	46	46

Engines and towed loads - DIESEL

Engines	HDi 90 BVM5	BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM5	BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM6
Gearboxes	Manual 5-speed	Manual 5-speed	Manual 6-speed
Codes	DV6DM - BE	DV5RD - BE	DV5RCF
Model codes Wheel 640 = /A... Wheel 620 = /B...	SX9HJC/B0 - SX9HJC/A0	YHYP ABS - ACS - BBS - BCS	SXYHTU
Cubic capacity (cc)	1560	1,560	1499
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	66	75	75
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	600	600	600
Unbraked trailer (kg)	450	450	450
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	46	46	46

Dimensions (in mm)

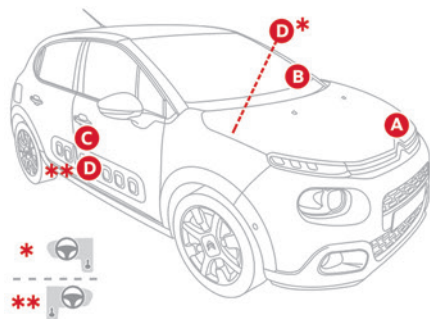
These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



* Mirrors folded in.

Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification and research of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.

Stamped on the chassis.

B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.

Engraved on a label, visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.

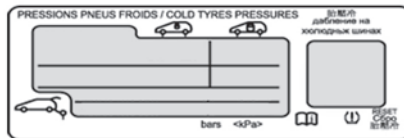
Affixed to the right-hand door.

Bears the following information:

- Manufacturer's name.
- European whole vehicle type approval number.
- Vehicle Identification number (VIN).
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW).
- Gross train weight (GTW).
- Maximum weight on the front axle.

- Maximum weight on the rear axle.

D. Tyres / paint code label.



Affixed to the driver's door.

Bears the following information about the tyres:

- tyre pressures, unladen and laden.
- tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices.
- spare tyre pressure.

Also indicates the paint colour code.

i The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting tyre pressure (on cold tyres).

Bluetooth® audio system



i The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

! Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

i To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

First steps



Press: On/Off.
Rotate: adjust volume.

SRC Short press: change audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming).

Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).



Adjust audio settings:
Front/rear fader; left/right balance; bass/treble; loudness; audio ambience.

Activate/Deactivate automatic volume adjustment (based on the vehicle's speed).

Radio :
LIST

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media :

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



Select the screen display mode, between:
Date; Audio functions; Trip computer;

Telephone.

OK

Confirm or display contextual menu.

1

Buttons 1 to 6.

Short press: select the preset radio station.

Long press: preset a radio station.

Radio:

Automatic step by step search up/down for radio stations.

Media:

Select previous/next CD, USB, streaming track.
Scroll in a list.

Radio:

Manual step by step search up/down for radio stations.

Select previous/next MP3 folder.

Media:

Select previous/next folder/genre/artist/playlist on the USB device.
Scroll in a list.

Cancel the current operation.

Go up one level (menu or folder).

Access the main menu.

MENU

TA Activate/Deactivate TA function (traffic announcements).

Long press: select type of announcement.

Selection of FM/DAB/AM wavebands.

BAND

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls - Type 1


Radio:

Select the previous / next preset radio station.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

Media:

Select the previous / next track.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

LIST Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.

Other than telephone call:

SRC / Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the **"Telephone"** menu is open.

Long press: open the **"Telephone"** menu.

In the event of a telephone call:

Short press: accept the call.

Long press: reject the call.

During a telephone call:

Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.

Long press: end the call.

Confirm a selection.

OK


Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute / Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2



MENU Access to the main menu.



Increase volume.



Mute / Restore the sound.



Decrease volume.

Other than telephone call:

SRC / Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the **"Telephone"** menu is open.

Long press: open the **"Telephone"** menu.

In the event of a telephone call:

Short press: accept the call.

Long press: reject the call.

During a telephone call:

Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.

Long press: end the call.



Start voice recognition on your smartphone via the system.

LIST Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.

Radio:


Select the previous / next preset radio station.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

Media:

Select the previous / next track.

Select the previous / next item in a menu or a list.

Press the thumbwheel: confirm.

Menus

Depending on version.



"Multimedia": Media settings, Radio settings.



"Telephone": Call, Directory management, Telephone management,

Hang up.



"Trip computer":



"Maintenance": Diagnosis, Warning log, etc.



"Connections": Manage connections, search for devices.



"Personalisation-configuration": Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

Press the **"MENU"** button.

MENU



Move from one menu to another.

OK

Enter a menu.

Radio

Selecting a station

SRC /

Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.

BAND

Press this button to select a waveband (FM / AM / DAB).



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.



Press one of the buttons to carry out a



manual search up / down for radio

frequencies.

LIST

Press this button to display the list of stations received locally.

To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

RDS



The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.



If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears struck out in the screen.



The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Short procedure

In **"Radio"** mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

Long procedure

Press the **MENU** button.

MENU



Select **"Audio functions"**.

OK

Press **OK**.



Select the **"FM waveband preferences"** function.

OK

Press **OK**.



Select **"Frequency tracking (RDS)"**.

OK

Press **OK**, RDS is displayed on the screen.

Play TA messages



The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, etc.) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

- TA** Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

Receiving INFO messages

i The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, etc.) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

- TA** Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.

▲ Select or deselect categories.
▼

- OK** Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Display TEXT INFOS

i Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the station's current programme or song.

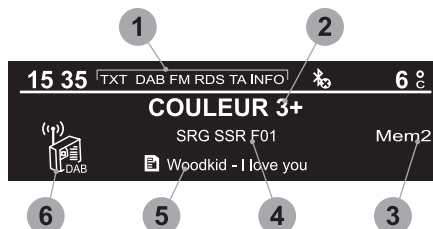
- OK** When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

▲ Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.
▼

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

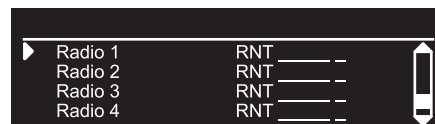
Depending on version

i If the current DAB radio station is not available on FM, "DAB FM" is struck out.



- Options display: if active but not available, the display will be struck out.
- Display showing the name of the current station.
- Preset stations, buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: memorise a radio station.
- Display showing the name of the "multiplex" service being used.
- RadioText (TXT) display for the current radio station.
- Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

i When changing region, updating the list of preset radio stations is recommended.



LIST Full list of radio stations and "multiplexes".

Terrestrial digital radio

i Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO). The different "multiplex / ensemble" services offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

BAND Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB, etc.)

◀▶ Change of station within the same "multiplex / ensemble".

▲ Starting of a search for the previous / next "multiplex / ensemble".
▼

TA Long press: selection of the categories of news desired among Transport, News, Entertainment and Special Flash (available depending on the station).

i When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press **"OK"** to display the contextual menu.
(Frequency search (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, etc.)

DAB / FM station tracking

i "DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.
When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue FM station (if it exists).
When the "DAB / FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

◀▶ Select **"Multimedia"** and confirm.

▲ ▼ Select **"DAB / FM auto tracking"** and confirm.

i If "DAB / FM auto tracking" tracking is enabled, there is a lag of a few seconds when the system switches to the analogue FM station sometimes with a change in volume.

! If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on FM ("DAB/FM" option struck out), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port

🔌 Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

i Any additional devices connected to the system must comply with the standard applicable to the product and/or the standard IEC 60950-1.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.

i When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically.

Play mode

The play modes available are:

- **Normal**: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- **Random**: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- **Random on all media**: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
- **Repeat**: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

OK Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.
▲ Press this button to select the chosen play mode.
▼ Press this button to confirm.

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

Choosing a track to play

◀▶ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track.
▲ ▼ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next folder.

File classification

LIST Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.



Select by "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" / "**Genre**" / "**Playlist**".

Depending on availability and type of device used.

Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

Playing files

LIST

Make a short press on this button to display the chosen classification.



Navigate in the list using the left / right and up / down buttons.

OK

Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous / next track in the list.

Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.



Press one of these buttons to go to the



previous / next "**Folder**" / "**Artist**" /

"**Genre**" / "**Playlist**"* in the list.

Input AUX socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).



Any additional devices connected to the system must comply with the standard

applicable to the product and/or the standard IEC 60950-1.

SRC /

Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume on your audio system. Controls are managed via the portable device.



Do not connect the same device to both the auxiliary jack socket and the USB port at the same time.

CD player

Insert circular compact discs only.

Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.

Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.



External CD players connected via the USB port are not recognised by the system.

SRC /

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".

Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.



LIST

Press the **LIST** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.



Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player.

The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.



On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels.

However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.

The folder structure is not observed during playback.

All of the files are displayed on a single level.

SRC /

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".



Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST

Press the **LIST** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

◀▶ Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the vehicle's loudspeakers. Connect the telephone.

(Refer to the **"Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone"** section).

Activate the streaming source by pressing **SRC**  **SOURCE**.

In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen.

If the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The CD player can play files with ".mp3", ".wma", ".wav" and ".aac" file extensions, with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.

It also supports TAG mode (ID3 tag, WMA TAG). No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.

Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

Via the USB port, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3", ".wma", ".wav", ".cbr", ".vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.

No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.

Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

File names should have fewer than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g. « ? ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2, or Joliet, if possible, when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

 Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (File Allocation Table).

 It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

 As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

 The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

Procedure from the telephone

 Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

Procedure from the system

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

 Select "**Connections**".

OK Confirm with **OK**.

 Select "**Search for a device**".

OK Confirm with **OK**.

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.

In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

Completing the pairing

 To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or

from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.

A message appears in the screen confirming the pairing.

Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu gives access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**", if your telephone equipment is fully compatible, "**Call log**", "**View paired devices**".

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.

 Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, etc.).

Managing connections

 The telephone connection automatically includes hands free operation and audio streaming.

The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

 Select "**Connections**".

OK Press **OK** to confirm.

 Select "Bluetooth **Connections**
 **management**" and confirm. The list of paired telephones is displayed.

OK Press **OK** to confirm.

 Indicates that a device is connected.

 A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:

- 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
- 2 for media and telephone.

 Indicates connection of the audio streaming profile.

 Indicates connection of the hands-free telephone profile.
 Select a telephone.

OK Press **OK** to confirm.

 Then select and confirm:


- "**Connect telephone**" / "**Disconnect telephone**" : to connect / disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
- "**Connect media player**" / "**Disconnect media player**" : to connect / disconnect streaming only.
- "**Connect telephone + media player**" / "**Disconnect telephone + media player**" : to

connect / disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).

– **"Delete connection"**: to delete the pairing.

i When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

OK Press **OK** to confirm.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

◀▶ Select the **"YES"** tab in the screen using the buttons.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

SRC / Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

Making a call

In the **"Telephone"** menu.

Select **"Call"**.

Select **"Dial"**.

Or

Select **"Directory"**.

Or

Select **"Calls list"**.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

SRC / Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

Ending a call

In the **"Telephone"** menu.

Select **"End call"**.

Confirm with **OK** to end the call.

SRC / During a call, press one of these buttons for more than two seconds.

i The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

i With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected. The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Managing calls

OK During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

End call

▲ In the contextual menu, select **"Hang up"**
▼ to end the call.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Microphone off

(so that the caller cannot hear)

▲ In the contextual menu:
▼

– select **"Micro OFF"** to switch off the microphone.

– deselect **"Micro OFF"** to switch the microphone on.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Telephone mode

▲ In the contextual menu:
▼

– select **"Telephone mode"** to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).

– deselect **"Telephone mode"** to transfer the call to the vehicle.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).

In some cases, the Telephone mode must be activated from the telephone.

Interactive voice response

▲ From the contextual menu, select **"DTMF tones"** and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Consultation call

▲ From the contextual menu, select
▼ **"Switch"** and validate to return to a call left on hold.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Directory

▲ To access the directory, press and hold
▼ **SRC/TEL**.
▲ Select **"Directory"** to see the list of
▼ contacts.
OK Confirm with **OK**.

MENU To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select **"Telephone"** and confirm.
Select **"Directory management"** and confirm.
You can:

- **"Consult an entry"**,
- **"Delete an entry"**,
- **"Delete all entries"**.



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its

compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.



With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.

Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.

The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system. To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR



Press this button.



Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.

When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.

The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to avoid discharging the vehicle's battery.

► Start the vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.

The message "the audio system is overheated" is displayed onscreen.

To protect the installation if the ambient temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode, in which the volume may be decreased or the CD player stopped.

► Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Radio

There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD, etc.).

For optimal listening quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) can be adjusted to different audio sources, resulting in audible differences when switching between sources (radio, CD, etc.).

► Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) are appropriate to the sources being listened to. We recommend setting the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Fr-Re

balance and Le-Ri balance) to the middle position, setting the musical ambience to "None", setting loudness correction to "Active" in CD mode and "Inactive" in Radio mode.

The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The wrong waveband is selected.

► Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.

Traffic announcement (TA) is shown but I receive no traffic information.

The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.

► Tune to a radio station that broadcasts traffic information.

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are inoperative (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the RDS function to allow the system to check for a more powerful transmitter in the area.

The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

The sound intermittently cuts out for 1 or 2 seconds in radio mode.

During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.

► Switch off the RDS function if the phenomenon occurs too frequently and always on the same route.

Media

The Bluetooth connection is cut.

The battery in the peripheral device may not be sufficiently charged.

► Charge the battery in the peripheral device.

The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.

The USB stick has not been recognised, or may be corrupted.

► Reformat the USB memory stick.

The CD is systematically ejected or is not played.

The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system.

The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.

► Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.

► Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged.

► Check the content in the case of a burned CD: read the recommendations in the "Audio" section.

Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be played by the audio system.

The CD audio quality is poor.

The CD is scratched or of poor quality.

► Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.

The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.

► Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.

I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB port.

Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.

► Manually activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

Telephone

I am unable to access my voicemail.

Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.

► Call your voicemail, via the telephone menu, using the number provided by your operator.

I am unable to access my directory of contacts.

► Check the compatibility of your telephone.

You did not grant access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.

- Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.

I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.

Handset mode is activated.

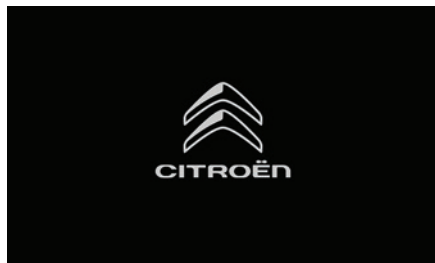
- Deselect handset mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.

I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.

Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specificities in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.

- Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the telephone pairing from the system **and** the system pairing from the telephone, in order to view the compatibility of the telephones.

CITROËN Connect Radio



Multimedia audio system - Applications - Bluetooth® telephone

i The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration.

! For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:

- Pairing the smartphone with the system in Bluetooth mode.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connection to the CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto applications (certain

applications interrupt their display while the vehicle is moving).

- Changing the system settings and configuration.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in the vehicle. The **Energy Economy Mode** message is displayed when the system is about to enter the corresponding mode.

i The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps

⏻ With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on. Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment). Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen. Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

At all times it is possible to display the rolling menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. For pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, it is possible to switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page, or by using a finger, sliding the pages to the left or to the right.

Press in the grey zone to go back up a level or to confirm.

Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.

To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.

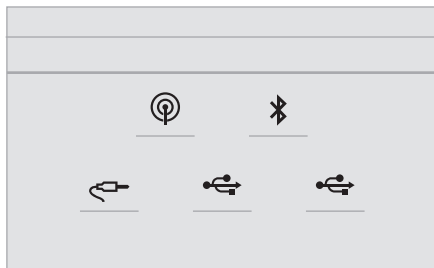
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:

- Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Radio Media and Telephone menu status information.
- Privacy status information.
- Access to the touch screen and digital instrument panel settings.

Audio source selection (depending on equipment):

- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB Memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).



i In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiances, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more. The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls - Type 1



Radio:

Select the previous/next preset radio station.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Media:

Select the previous/next track.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.



Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.

Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls - Type 2



Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).

Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.



Telephone (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

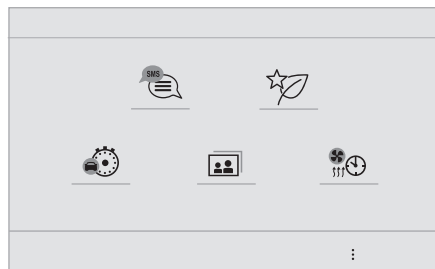
LIST Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

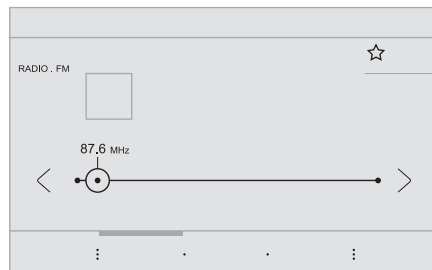
Menus

Applications



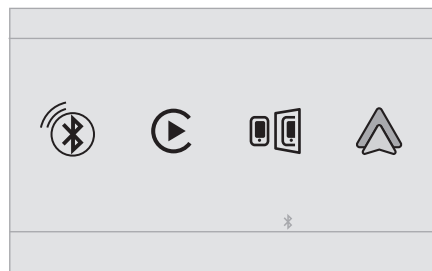
Access configurable equipment.

Radio Media



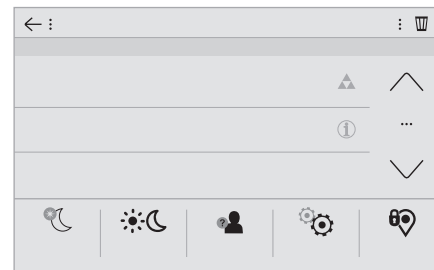
Select an audio source or radio station.

Telephone



Connect a mobile phone via Bluetooth®.
Run certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Settings



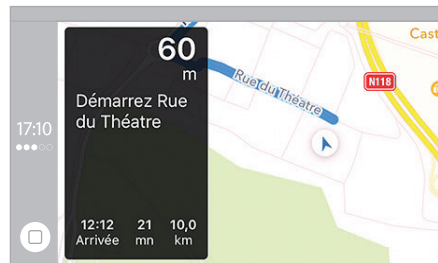
Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

Driving



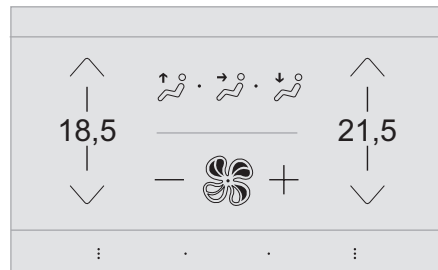
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Navigation



Configure the navigation and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.

Air conditioning



Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp and .png.

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press **"Photos"**.



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.

Press the back arrow to go back a level.



Managing messages

Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press **"SMS"**.



Select the **"SMS"** tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to search and select a recipient.



Select the **"Quick messages"** tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to write a new message.



Press the bin alongside the selected message to delete it.



Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.



Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.



Press this button to write a new message.



Press the bin to delete the message.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.



Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press the frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press **"OK"** to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.

The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Changing the waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Press **"Band"** to change waveband.



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press **"Preset"**.



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate **"RDS"**.



Press in the shaded area to confirm.



RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate **"News"**.



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate **"TA"**.



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Press **"Audio settings"**.



Select the **"Tone"**, **"Balance"**, **"Sound"**, **"Voice"** or **"Ringtones"** tab to configure the sound settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

I In the **"Tone"** tab, the **Ambience**, **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** sound settings are different and independent for each audio source.

In the **"Balance"** tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.

In the **"Sound"** tab, activate or deactivate **"Volume linked to speed"**, **"Auxiliary input"** and **"Touch tones"**.



The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.



Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging® optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound. The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Press **"Band"** to select **"DAB band"**.



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

FM-DAB Follow-up

"DAB" does not cover 100 % of the country. When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate **"FM-DAB Follow-up"**.



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

I If "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there may be a time offset of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume. When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).



To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

Auxiliary (AUX) jack socket

Depending on equipment

 Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

Controls are managed via the portable device.

Selecting the source

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"SOURCES"** button.

Select the source.

BluetoothStreaming®

Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated.

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

 Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

 The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts). It is also possible to use a classification structured in the form of a library.

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Devices are managed using the audio system controls.

Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.

 To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.

All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.

The supported sampling rates are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. " ? . ; ù).

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

 We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

Telephone

USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

i The synchronisation of a smartphone allows users to display applications adapted to the CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto technology of the smartphone on the vehicle screen. For the CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must be activated on the smartphone beforehand. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work, it is essential in all cases that the smartphone is unlocked.

As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, as well as the date and time of the smartphone and of the system.** For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's national website.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

i The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®

 When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.

 Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

 From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the main page.

 Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **"MirrorLink™"** function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®

 Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

 From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the main page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to display the secondary page.

 Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed, showing the applications already downloaded to the smartphone that are compatible with MirrorLink™ technology. Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

 Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

 From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or

 If the smartphone has already connected by Bluetooth®.

 Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

 From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the main page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to access the secondary page.

 Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

 On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

 When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.

 The CarPlay® navigation can be accessed at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection

 On the smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

 The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®

 Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

 From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

 Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system. Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

 When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®

 From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.

 Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system. Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

 There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

 The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

 The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all" (in the telephone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

 If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

Procedure from the telephone

 Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices. In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

Procedure from the system

-  Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
-  Press **"Bluetooth search"**.
The list of detected telephones is displayed.
-  Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
 - **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),
 - **"Mobile internet data"**.
- ☒ Select one or more profiles.

OK Press **"OK"** to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

i The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.

i The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

-  Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
- Press the **"PHONE"** button to access the secondary page.
-  Press **"Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**
-  Press the "Details" button for a paired device.
- ☒ Select one or more profiles.
- OK** Press **"OK"** to confirm.

Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.

-  Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
- Press the **"PHONE"** button to access the secondary page.
-  Press **"Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**

-  Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.
Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

-  Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.
-  Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

-  Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And

-  Make a long press

-  on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or

-  Press **"End call"**.

Making a call

-  Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
- Parking the vehicle.
- Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

-  Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
-  Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.
-  Press **"Call"** to start the call.

Calling a contact

-  Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
-  Or press and hold the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press **"Contacts"**.

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

-  Press **"Call"**.

Calling a recently used number

-  Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
-  Or press and hold the steering mounted button.

Press **"Recent calls"**.

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

 It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone

-  Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
- Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.
-  Press **"Ring volume"** to display the volume bar.
-  Press the arrows or move the slider to set the ring volume.

Settings

Configuring profiles

-  Press **Settings** to display the main page.
-  Press **"Profiles"**.
- Select **"Profile 1"**, **"Profile 2"**, **"Profile 3"** or **"Common profile"**.
-  Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.
-  Press **"OK"** to save.
-  Press the back arrow to confirm.
-  Press this button to activate the profile.

-  Press the back arrow again to confirm.
-  Press this button to reset the selected profile.

Adjusting the brightness

-  Press **Settings** to display the main page.
-  Press **Brightness**.
-  Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).
-  Press in the shaded area to confirm.

Modifying system settings

-  Press **Settings** to display the main page.
-  Press **"Configuration"** to access the secondary page.
-  Press **"System configuration"**.

Press the **"Units"** tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature. Press the **"Factory settings"** tab to restore the initial settings.

 Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the **"System info"** tab to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.

Press the **"Privacy"** tab,
or

 Press **Settings** to display the main page.

 Press **"Privacy"** to activate or deactivate the private data mode.

 Activate or deactivate:

- **"No sharing (data, vehicle position)"**.
- **"Only data sharing"**
- **"Data and vehicle position sharing"**

 Press the back arrow to confirm.

 Press **Settings** to display the main page.

 Press **"Configuration"** to access the secondary page.

 Press **"Screen configuration"**.

Press **"Brightness"**.

 Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).

 Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press **"Animation"**.

☒ Activate or deactivate: **"Automatic scrolling"**.

☒ Select **"Animated transitions"**.

 Press the back arrow to confirm.

Selecting the language

 Press **Settings** to display the main page.

 Press **"Configuration"** to access the secondary page.

 Select **"Language"** to change the language.

 Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time

 Press **Settings** to display the main page.

 Press **"Configuration"** to access the secondary page.

 Press **"Date and time"**.

Select **"Time"**.

 Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.

OK Press **"OK"** to save the time.

 Press this button to set the time zone.

 Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

 Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

 Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

 Press the back arrow to save the settings.

 The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date

 Press **Settings** to display the main page.

 Press **"Configuration"** to access the secondary page.

 Press **"Date and time"**.

Select **"Date"**.

 Press this button to set the date.

 Press the back arrow to save the date.

 Select the display format for the date.

 Press the back arrow again to confirm.

 Time and date setting is only available if "GPS Synchronisation" is deactivated.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Radio

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the "RDS" function in the upper bar to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.

The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction. The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example while entering a car wash or underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations.

The name of the radio station changes.

The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.

► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).

The system interprets these details as the station name.

► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).

Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).

► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.

Some characters in information about the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.

The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.

► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.

Playback of streaming files does not start.

The connected device does not automatically launch playback.

► Start playback from the device.

Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.

The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.

The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.

► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.

► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".

The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.

► Check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).

Android Auto and CarPlay do not work.

Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.

► Use genuine USB cables to ensure compatibility.

The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.

The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.

► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.

Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.

► Reduce ambient noise (close windows, reduce ventilation, slow down, etc.).

The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.

Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.

- Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.

When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.

Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.

- Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.

When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.

When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.

Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.

- Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.

There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.

To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.

- Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. Adjust the sound functions to the middle position.

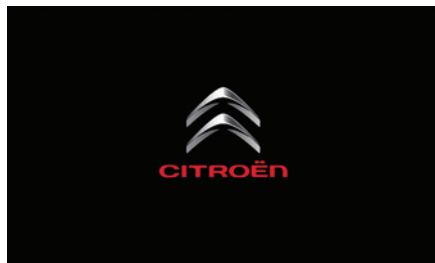
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.

When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.

The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.

- Start the vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.

CITROËN Connect Nav



GPS navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio system - Bluetooth® telephone

i The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration.

! For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:

- Pairing the smartphone with the system in Bluetooth mode.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connection to the CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto applications (certain

applications interrupt their display while the vehicle is moving).

- Changing the system settings and configuration.

i The system is protected so that it only operates in the vehicle.

The message **Energy Economy Mode** is displayed when the system is about to enter the corresponding mode.

i System and map updates can be downloaded from the Brand's website.

The update procedure is also available on the website.

i The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:

<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers. All of the touch areas of the screen are white. Press the cross to go back a level. Press "OK" to confirm.



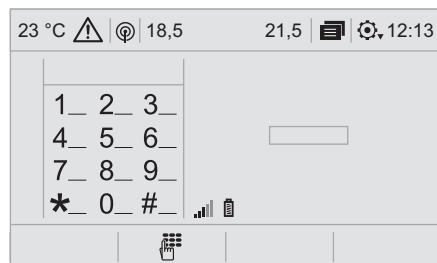
The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.

To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.

Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

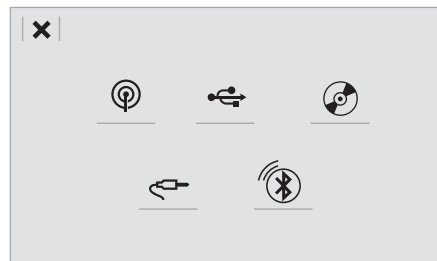
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- FM/DAB/AM* radios*
- USB memory stick.
- CD Player (depending on model).
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast* (streaming).



i In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Voice control:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).

Short press, system voice control.

Long press, voice control for smartphone or CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ (availability depending on country), Android Auto via the system.

+ Increase volume.

— Decrease volume.

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

SRC Media (short press): change the multimedia source.

 **Telephone** (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

 **Radio** (rotate): automatic search for the previous / next station.

Media (rotate): previous / next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

* depending on equipment.

Menus

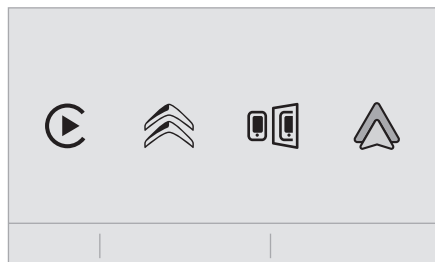
Connected navigation



 Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

Use real-time services, depending on equipment.

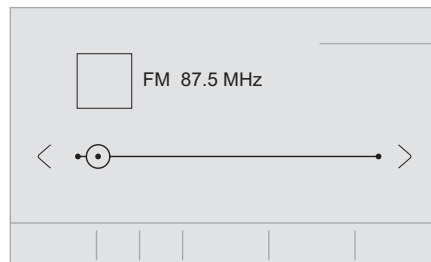
Applications



 Run certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ (available in some countries) or Android Auto.

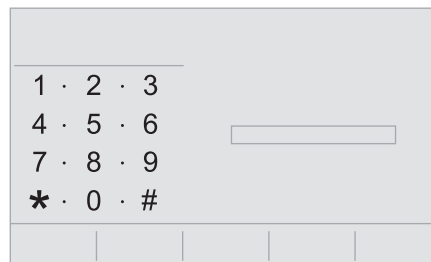
Check the status of Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

Radio Media



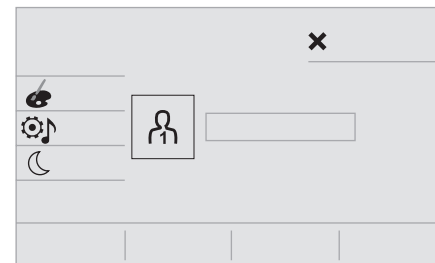
 Select an audio source or radio station, or display photographs.

Telephone



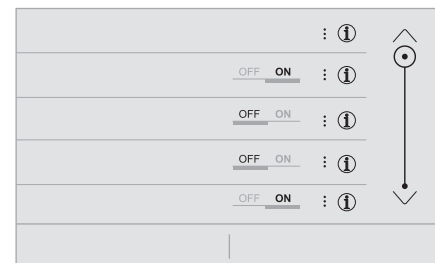
 Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

Settings



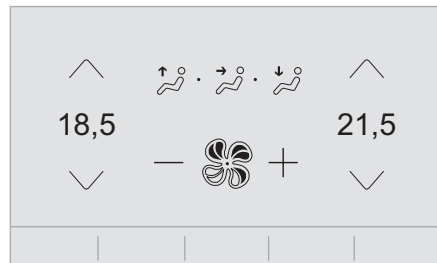
 Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

Vehicle



 Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

Air conditioning



 Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

Voice commands

Steering-mounted controls



Voice commands:

Voice commands can be issued from any screen page after briefly pressing the "Voice commands" button, located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment), as long as there is no telephone call in progress.



To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:

- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.

- for best operation, we recommend closing the windows and sunroof (depending on version) to avoid any external interference.
- before issuing a voice command, ask any other passengers to refrain from speaking.

First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:

"Navigate to address, 11 Regent Street, London".

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:

"Play artist, Madonna".

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:

"Call David Miller".



The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.

For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.

Example: Guide to / Navigate to / Go to / ...

The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city" are not available.

Information - Using the system



Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands



Voice commands

Help

Voice commands help

Navigation help

Radio help

Media help

Telephone help



Help messages

There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with

radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".



Voice commands

Set dialogue mode as <...>



Help messages

Choose "beginner" or "expert" mode.



Voice commands

Select profile <...>



Help messages

Select profile 1, 2 or 3.



Voice commands

Yes

No



Help messages

Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.

"Navigation" voice commands



Voice commands

Navigate home

Navigate to work

Navigate to preferred address <...>

Navigate to contact <...>

Navigate to address <...>

Show nearby POI <...>



Help messages

To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can specify if it's a preferred or recent destination. For example, "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London". Otherwise, just say, "navigate home". To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol station". For more information you can ask for "help with route guidance".



Voice commands

Remaining distance

Remaining time

Arrival time

Stop route guidance



Help messages

To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "distance" or "arrival time". Try saying "help with navigation" to learn more commands.



Depending on the country, give destination (address) instructions in the language configured for the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands



Voice commands

Tune to channel <...>



Help messages

You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number". For example "tune to preset number five".



Voice commands

What's playing



Help messages

To display the details of the current "song", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing".



Voice commands

Play song <...>

Play artist <...>

Play album <...>



Help messages

Use the command "play" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play

artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".

i Media voice commands are available only with a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

i If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.



Voice commands

Call contact <...>*

Dial <...>*

Display contacts*

Display calls*

Call (message box | voicemail)*



Help messages

To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the

phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".

"Text message" voice commands

i If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.



Voice commands

Send text to <...>

Listen to most recent message**



Help messages

To hear your messages, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name

and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages. Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To undo your selection, say "undo". To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".

i The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination

 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the **"MENU"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"Enter address"**.



Select the **"Country"**.

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

** This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

 Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**", and confirm by pressing on the displayed suggestions.

OK Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/or

 Select "**See on map**" to choose the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start guided navigation.

 Zoom in/out using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

 In order to be able to use the navigation function, you must enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" on the virtual keyboard, or select them from the list in "**Contact**" or in the address "**History**".

 If you do not enter the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

To a recent destination

 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

 Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the chosen address from the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start guided navigation.

 Select "**Position**" to see the point of arrival on the map.

To "My home" or "My work"

 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

 Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.

 Select "**My home**".

Or

 Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

To a contact

 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

 Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start guided navigation.

To points of interest (POI)

Points of interest (POI) are listed in different categories.

 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to access the secondary page.

 Select "**Points of interest**".

 Select the "**Travel**", "**leisure**", "**Commercial**", "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or

 Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

Press "**OK**" to calculate the route.

OK

To a point on the map

 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Explore the map by sliding your finger across the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.

 Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.

Press this button to start guided navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the displayed address.



Pressing and holding on a point opens a list of nearby POIs.

To GPS coordinates



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Explore the map by sliding your finger across the screen.



Press this button to display the world map.

Using the grid, select the desired country or region by zooming in.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and

"**Longitude**" coordinates.



Press this button to start guided navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the displayed address.

OR



Press this button to enter the "**Latitude**" value using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the "**Longitude**" value using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)



TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time. The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.



The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

Depending on version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle



OR

Network connection provided by the user



Connected navigation connection



As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.

All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.

Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

USB connection



Connect a USB cable.

The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Applications" section).

Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi network found by the **WIFI** system and connect to it (see the "Applications" section).



Restrictions of use:

- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
 - With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.
- The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.



With the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.



The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.

A Connected Services pack:

- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.

A Danger zone pack (option).



The processes and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, we recommend that you **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

Settings specific to connected navigation



In the "Settings" menu, you can create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, favourite contacts, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the **"MENU"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"Settings"**.

Select **"Map"**.



Activate or deactivate:

- **"Allow declaration of danger zones"**.
- **"Guidance to final destination on foot"**
- **"Authorize sending information"**

These settings must be configured for each profile.

Select **"Alerts"**.



Activate or deactivate **"Warn of danger zones"**.



Select this button.



Activate: **Give an audible warning**



For access to connected navigation, you must tick the option: **"Authorize sending information"**



Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.

Declaration of "Danger zones"



To send information on the declaration of danger zones, you must tick the option: **"Allow declaration of danger zones"**



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.



Press the **"Declare a new danger zone"** button located in the upper bar on the

touch screen



Select the **"Type"** option to select the type of "Danger area".



Select the **"Speed"** option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press **"OK"** to save and send the information.

"Danger zones" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"System administration"**.



Select the **"System info"** tab.



Select **"View"** to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Select **"Update(s) due"**.



You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website.

The update procedure can also be found on the website.

Displaying weather information



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select **"View map"**.



Select **"Weather"**.



Press this button to display basic information.



Press this button to display detailed weather information.



The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day.
The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

Internet Browser



Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press **"Connectivity"** to access the **"Internet Browser"** function.

Press **"Internet Browser"** to display the browser home page.



Select your country of residence.

OK

Press **"OK"** to save and start the browser.



Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press **"Connectivity"** to access the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** functions.

Applications



Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press **"Applications"** to display the applications home page.

CarPlay® smartphone connection



As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.

All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Smartphone synchronisation allows users to display smartphone applications compatible with the CarPlay® technology on the vehicle's screen, provided that the smartphone's CarPlay® function has previously been activated.
As processes and standards are constantly changing, **we recommend updating your smartphone's operating system.**

For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the vehicle brand's website in your country.



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



Press **"Telephone"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press **"Applications"** to display the main page.

Press **"Connectivity"** to access the "CarPlay®" function.



Press **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i Smartphone synchronisation allows users to display smartphone applications on the vehicle's screen.

Processes and standards are constantly changing. The communication process between the smartphone and the system requires the smartphone to be unlocked; **update the smartphone's operating system and the date and time on the smartphone and in the system.**

For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the vehicle brand's website in your country.



As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



The **"MirrorLink™"** function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press **"Applications"** to display the main page.

Press **"Connectivity"** to access the "MirrorLink™" function.



Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **"MirrorLink™"** function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection. Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone which are compatible with the MirrorLink™ technology. Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.



There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Android Auto smartphone connection



As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i Synchronising a smartphone allows users to display applications compatible with the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.

Processes and standards are constantly changing. The communication process between the smartphone and the system requires the smartphone to be unlocked;

update the smartphone's operating system and the date and time on the smartphone and in the system.

For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the vehicle brand's website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

 Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

 From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "Android Auto" function.

 Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection. Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i In Android Auto mode, the function that displays rolling menus by briefly pressing the screen with three fingers is disabled.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Bluetooth connection®

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.



To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press on "**Bluetooth connection**".



Select "**Search**".

The list of telephones detected is displayed.



If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.



Depending on the type of telephone, you may be prompted to accept (or decline) the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.

 The **"Mobile internet data"** profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.

 Select one or more profiles.

OK Press **"OK"** to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection via the smartphone's Wi-Fi.

 Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.

 Select **"Wi-Fi network connection"**.

WIFI

 Select the **"Secured"**, **"Not secured"** or **"Stored"** tab.

 Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the Wi-Fi network **"Key"** and **"Password"**.

OK

Press **"OK"** to establish the connection.



The Wi-Fi connection and Wi-Fi connection sharing are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.



Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"Share Wi-Fi connection"**.

Select the **"Activation"** tab to activate or deactivate Wi-Fi connection sharing.

And/or

Select the **"Settings"** tab to change the system's network name and password.

OK Press **"OK"** to confirm.



To protect against unauthorised access and to make your systems as secure as possible, we recommend using a complex password or security code.

Managing connections



Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"Manage connection"**.

With this function, you can view the access to connected services, check the availability of connected services and change the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press on **"Frequency"**.

 Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

 Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Radio stations"** on the secondary page.

Press on **"Frequency"**.

 Enter the values using the virtual keypad.
First enter the units then click on the decimals field to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)
Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.



RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, RDS station tracking may not be possible nationwide, as radio stations do not always cover the entire country. This can explain the loss of reception of a station during a journey.

Displaying text information



The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/deactivate "**Display radio text**".



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Play TA messages



The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio



Digital radio provides higher quality reception.

The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.



Select the audio source.

Press **"Band"** to select the **"DAB"** waveband.

FM-DAB tracking



"DAB" does not cover 100% of the country.

When the digital radio signal is poor, "FM-DAB auto tracking" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"Radio settings"**.

Select **"General"**.



Activate/deactivate **"Station follow"**.

OK

Press on **"OK"**.



If "FM-DAB auto tracking" is activated, there may be a time lag of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume. When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".



If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("FM-DAB" greyed out), or "FM-DAB auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB socket



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB socket or connect the USB device to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).



To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model / depending on equipment)



Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume on your audio system.

Controls are managed via the portable device.

CD player

(depending on model / depending on equipment)
Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.



Select **"Source"**.

Select the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artists.
To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Device management is done by the audio system controls.

Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " " ? ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB keys in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

✱ Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or

from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

 Press **"Bluetooth search"**.

Or

 Select **"Search"**.

The list of telephones detected is displayed.

 If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on your telephone.

 Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.

 Activation of the profile; **"Mobile internet data"** is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.

 Select one or more profiles.

OK Press **"OK"** to confirm.

 Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

 On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the pairing is established without any action on your part (with Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.

 Select **"Bluetooth connection"** to display the list of paired devices.

 Press the **"Details"** button.

 Select one or more profiles.

OK Press **"OK"** to confirm.

 The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone. By default, all three profiles are able to connect.

 The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Refer to your telephone's user guide and your service provider to check which services you are able to access.

 The system supports the following profiles: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones

 This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.

 Select **"Bluetooth connection"** to display the list of paired devices.

 Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.

Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

-  Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.
-  Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

 Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And

 Make a long press

 on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or

 Select "**End call**".

Making a call

 Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.

Park the vehicle.

Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

-  Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
-  Enter the number using the digital keypad.
-  Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact

-  Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
-  Or press and hold
-  on the steering-mounted **TEL** button.
- Select "**Contact**".
- Select the desired contact in the displayed list.
-  Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

-  Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
- Or
-  Press and hold
-  on the steering-mounted button.
- Select "**Calls**".
- Select the desired contact in the displayed list.

 It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries

-  Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
- Select "**Contact**".
-  Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

 The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages

-  Press **Telephone** to display the main page.
- Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.
-  Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.
-  Select the "**All**", "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" tab.
-  Select the details of the message chosen in one of the lists.

 Press **"Answer"** to send a quick message stored in the system.

 Press **"Call"** to start a call.

 Press **"Play"** to listen to the message.

 Access to **"Messages"** depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system. Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

 The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Refer to your smartphone manual and your service provider to check which services are available to you.

Managing quick messages

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.

 Select **"Quick messages"** to display the list of messages.

 Select the **"Delayed"**, **"My arrival"**, **"Not available"** or **"Other"** tab, enabling you to create new messages.

 Press **"Create"** to write a new message.

 Select the message chosen in one of the lists.

 Press **"Transfer"** to select one or more recipients.

 Press **"Play"** to start playing the message.

Managing email

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.

 Select **"Email"** to display the list of messages.

 Select the **"Incoming"**, **"Sent"** or **"Not read"** tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.

 Press **"Play"** to start playing the message.

 Access to **"Email"** depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system.

Settings

Audio settings

 Press **Settings** to display the main page.

 Select **"Audio settings"**.

Select **"Ambience"**.

Or **"Position"**.

Or

"Sound".

Or

"Voice".

Or

"Ringtone".

Press **"OK"** to save the settings.

OK

 The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speaker configuration.

 The **Ambience** setting (choice of 6 ambiances) as well as for **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source. Activate or deactivate **"Loudness"**. The **"Position"** settings (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources. Activate or deactivate **"Touch tones"**, **"Volume linked to speed"** and **"Auxiliary input"**.

 Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging® optimises the sound balance/distribution inside the passenger compartment.

Configuring profiles

 As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, the operations must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"Setting of the profiles"**.

Select **"Profile 1"**, **"Profile 2"**, **"Profile 3"** or **"Common profile"**.



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

Press **"OK"** to confirm.

OK



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB socket.

Select the photograph.

OK

Press **"OK"** to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK

Press **"OK"** again to save the settings.

 The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.

00.0

Press this button to reset the selected profile.

 Resetting the selected profile activates the English language by default.

Select a **"Profile"** (1 or 2 or 3) to link the **"Audio settings"** with it.



Select **"Audio settings"**.

Select **"Ambience"**.

Or

"Position".

Or

"Sound".

Or

"Voice".

Or

"Ringtone".

Press **"OK"** to save the settings.

OK

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"Screen configuration"**.

Select **"Animation"**.



Activate or deactivate: **"Automatic scrolling"**.

Select **"Brightness"**.



Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"System settings"**.

Select **"Units"** to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select **"Factory settings"** to restore the initial settings.



Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

Select **"System info"** to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.

Selecting the language



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Languages"** to change the language.

Setting the date

 Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.

 Select **"Setting the time-date"**.

Select **"Date"**.

 Press this button to set the date.

OK Press **"OK"** to confirm.

 Select the display format for the date.

 Time and date setting is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated. The change between winter and summer time is made by changing the time zone.

Setting the time

 Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.

 Select **"Setting the time-date"**.

Select **"Time"**.

 Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.

OK Press **"OK"** to confirm.

 Press this button to set the time zone.

 Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

 Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

OK Press **"OK"** to confirm.

 The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

Colour schemes

 For safety reasons, the colour scheme can only be changed while the **vehicle is stationary**.

 Press **Settings** to display the main page.

 Select **"Color schemes"**.

 Select a colour scheme in the list then press **"OK"** to confirm.

 Whenever the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

Navigation

I cannot enter the navigation address.

The address is not recognised.

► Use the "intuitive method" by pressing the "Search..." button at the bottom of the "Navigation" page.

The route calculation is not successful.

The route settings may conflict with the current location (for example, if toll roads are excluded but the vehicle is on a toll road).

► Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.

I do not receive "Danger zone" alerts.

You have not subscribed to the online services option.

► If you have subscribed to the option:

- a few days may elapse before the service is activated,
- services may not be selected in the system menu,
- online services are not active ("TOMTOM TRAFFIC" not shown on the map).

The POIs do not appear.

The POIs have not been selected.

► Set the zoom level to 600 ft (200 m) or select POIs in the POI list.

The "Danger zone" audible warning feature is not working.

The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.

► Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the sound settings.

The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.

The route settings do not take account of TMC messages.

► Configure the "Traffic info" function in the route settings list (Without, Manual or Automatic).

I receive a warning about a "Danger area" that is not on my route.

As well as providing guided navigation, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.

► Zoom the map to show the exact location of the "Danger area". You can select "On the route" to stop receiving warnings or decrease the warning duration.

Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.

On starting, a few minutes may elapse before the system begins to receive traffic information.

► Wait until traffic information is being received correctly (traffic information icons shown on the map).

In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.

This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.

On starting, GPS initialisation may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.

► Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.

Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.

This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

My navigation is no longer connected.

During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.

► Check that the online services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.

The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example while entering a car wash or underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.

The name of the radio station changes.

The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.

Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).

The system interprets these details as the station name.

► Press the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.

Media

Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).

Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).

► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.

The CD is systematically ejected or is not played.

The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system.

► Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.

► Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged.

The CD has been burned in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.).

► Check the content if it is a burned CD: consult the advice in the "AUDIO" section.

► The audio system CD player does not play DVDs.

The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.

► Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be played by the audio system.

There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.

The system reads a variety of data (folder, title, artist, etc.). This can take from a few seconds to a few minutes.

This is perfectly normal.

The CD audio quality is poor.

The CD is scratched or of poor quality.

► Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.

The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.

► Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.

Some characters in the information about the media currently being played are not displayed correctly.

The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.

► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.

Playback of files in audio streaming mode does not start.

The connected device does not automatically start playback.

► Start playback from the device.

The names of tracks and playing times are not displayed on the screen in audio streaming mode.

The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

Telephone

I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.

The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.

► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.

► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".

► Deactivate then reactivate the telephone's Bluetooth function.

The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.

► You can check that your telephone is compatible on the Brand's website (services).

The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.

The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.

► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.

Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.

► Reduce the ambient noise level (close windows, reduce ventilation, slow down, etc.).

Some contacts are duplicated in the list.

The options for synchronising contacts are: synchronise the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.

► Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".

The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.

Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.

► Modify the telephone directory display settings.

The system does not receive SMS.

SMS text messages cannot be sent to the system in Bluetooth mode.

Settings

When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.

When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.

Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.

► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.

When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.

When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.

Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.

► Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.

There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.

To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.

► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. We recommend setting the sound functions (Bass:, Treble:, Balance) to the middle position, setting the musical ambience to "None", setting loudness correction to "Active" in USB mode and "Inactive" in Radio mode.

► In all cases, after applying sound settings, adjust the volume level on the portable device (to

a high level) first. Then adjust the volume level on the audio system.

When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.

When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.

The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.

► Start the vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.

The date and time cannot be set.

Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.

► Settings menu / Options / Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

A

ABS 58
 Accessories 55
 Active Safety Brake 94–96
 AdBlue® 15, 112
 AdBlue® tank 113
 Additive, Diesel 110–111
 Adjusting headlamps 51
 Adjusting head restraints 32
 Adjusting seat 33
 Adjusting the air distribution 39
 Adjusting the air flow 38–39
 Adjusting the date 17, 166, 189
 Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel 35
 Adjusting the seat angle 33
 Adjusting the temperature 39
 Adjusting the time 17, 166, 189
 Advice on care and maintenance 114
 Advice on driving 6, 74
 Airbags 61, 63, 65
 Airbags, curtain 62–63
 Airbags, front 62–63, 66
 Airbags, lateral 62–63
 AIRBUMP® 115
 Air conditioning 37
 Air conditioning, automatic 38–39
 Air conditioning, manual 38
 Air intake 38–39
 Air vents 36
 Alarm 29–30

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 58
 Antitheft / Immobiliser 24
 Apple CarPlay connection 162, 178
 Armrest, front 43
 Assistance call 56
 Assistance, emergency braking 58, 96
 Audible warning 56
 Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 149, 161, 183

B

Battery 106, 132–134
 Battery, 12 V 111–112, 133
 Battery, charging 133–134
 Battery, remote control 27
 Blind 41
 Blind spot sensors 98
 BlueHDi 15, 110, 116
 Bluetooth (hands-free) 150, 163, 184
 Bluetooth (telephone) 163–164, 184–185
 Bodywork 115
 Bonnet 107–108
 Boot 28, 45
 Brake discs 112
 Brakes 111
 Braking assistance system 58–59
 Braking, automatic emergency 94–96
 Brightness 165
 Bulbs 124
 Bulbs (changing) 123–124

C

Cable, audio 183
 Cable, Jack 183
 Capacity, fuel tank 103–104
 Cap, fuel filler 103–104
 Care of the bodywork 115
 CD 148, 161, 183
 CD, MP3 148, 161, 183
 Central locking 25, 29
 Changing a bulb 123–124, 126–127
 Changing a fuse 127–129, 131
 Changing a wheel 117, 120
 Changing a wiper blade 52–53
 Changing the remote control battery 27
 Checking the engine oil level 14
 Checking the levels 109–111
 Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 118–119
 Checks 108, 111–112
 Checks, routine 111–112
 Child lock 72–73
 Children 60, 66–67, 69, 72
 Children (safety) 72–73
 Child seats 60, 63–66, 69, 72
 Child seats, conventional 66
 Child seats, i-Size 72
 Child seats, ISOFIX 67–69
 Cleaning (advice) 114–115
 Closing the boot 25, 28
 Closing the doors 25
 Coat hanger 43

Collision Risk Alert 94–95
 Configuration, vehicle 17–19
 Connection,
 Bluetooth 150, 163–164, 180–181, 184–185
 Connection, MirrorLink 162–163, 179
 Connection, Wi-Fi network 181
 Container, AdBlue® 113
 Control, electric windows 31
 Control, emergency boot release 28
 Control, emergency door 26
 Control, heated seats 33
 Control stalk, lighting 47–48
 Control stalk, wipers 51–53
 Courtesy lamp 41, 127
 Courtesy lamps 41
 Cover, load space 45
 Cruise control 90, 92–94
 Cruise control by speed limit recognition 90
 Cruise control, dynamic with Stop function 90

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) -
 Digital radio 146, 160–161, 182
 Date (setting) 17, 166, 189
 Daytime running lamps 49, 124
 Deactivating the passenger airbag 62, 65–66
 Deadlocking 24–25
 Defrosting 41–42
 Defrosting, front 40
 Demisting, front 40
 Demisting, rear 41

Demisting, rear screen 41
 Dimensions 141
 Dipstick 14, 109
 Direction indicators 48, 124
 Doors 28
 Driver's attention warning 97
 Driving 74
 Driving aids camera (warnings) 87
 Driving aids (recommendations) 87
 Driving economically 6
 Dynamic stability control (DSC) 58

E

EBFD 58
 Eco-driving (advice) 6
 Economy mode 106
 Electric windows 30
 Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 58
 Emergency braking assistance (EBA) 58
 Emergency call 56
 Emergency switching off 78
 Emergency warning lamps 55, 116
 Emissions control system, SCR 16, 112
 Energy economy mode 106
 Engine compartment 108
 Engine, Diesel 104, 108, 116, 141
 Engine, petrol 108, 139
 Engines 138–139, 141
 Environment 6, 27
 ESC (electronic stability control) 58

F

Fatigue detection 96–97
 Filling the AdBlue® tank 110, 113
 Filling the fuel tank 103–104
 Filter, air 111
 Filter, oil 111
 Filter, particle 110–111
 Filter, passenger compartment 37, 111
 Fitting a wheel 120, 122
 Fitting roof bars 106–107
 Fittings, boot 44–45
 Fittings, interior 42
 Flap, fuel filler 103–104
 Flashing indicators 48, 124
 Fluid, brake 110
 Fluid, engine coolant 110
 Foglamp, rear 47
 Foglamps, front 47, 124–125
 Foglamps, rear 47
 Folding the rear seats 34
 Frequency (radio) 182
 Fuel 6, 104
 Fuel consumption 6
 Fuel tank 103–104
 Fusebox, dashboard 128
 Fusebox, engine compartment 128, 131
 Fuses 127–129, 131

G

Gauge, fuel 103–104

Gearbox, automatic 79, 81–84, 111
 Gearbox, manual 79, 82–84, 111
 Gear lever, manual gearbox 79
 Gear shift indicator ~ Gear efficiency
 indicator 82
 Glove box 42
 G.P.S. 176

H

Hazard warning lamps 55, 116
 headlamp adjustment 51
 Headlamp adjustment 51
 Headlamps, automatic dipping 50–51
 Headlamps, automatic illumination 47–50
 Headlamps, dipped beam 47, 124–125
 Headlamps, halogen 124
 Headlamps, main beam 47, 124–125
 Head restraints, front 32
 Head restraints, rear 34
 Heating 36, 38
 Hill start assist 82–83
 Hooks 44
 Horn 56

I

Ignition 40, 78, 186
 Ignition on 78
 Ignition switch 75–76
 Immobiliser, electronic 75

Indicator, AdBlue® range 15
 Indicator, coolant temperature 13
 Indicator, engine oil level 14
 Indicators, direction 48
 Inflating tyres 112, 142
 Inflating tyres and accessories
 (using the kit) 118–119
 Infrared camera 88
 Instrument panel 7–8, 88
 Instrument panels 7
 Internet browser 178
 ISOFIX mountings 67

J

Jack 117, 120, 183
 Jump starting 133

K

Key 23–26
 Key, electronic 24–25
 Keyless Entry and Starting 24–25, 75, 77
 Key not recognised 78
 Key with remote control 23, 75
 Kit, hands-free 150, 163, 184
 Kit, puncture repair 117
 Kit, temporary puncture repair 117–119

L

Labels, identification 142
 Lamp, boot 45, 127
 Lamps, parking 48
 Lamps, rear 126
 Lane Departure Warning System
 (LDWS) 97–98
 LEDs - Light-emitting diodes 49, 124
 Level, AdBlue® 110
 Level, brake fluid 110
 Level, Diesel additive 110–111
 Level, engine coolant 13, 110
 Level, engine oil 14, 109
 Levels and checks 108–110
 Level, screenwash fluid 52, 110
 Light-emitting diodes - LEDs 49, 124, 127
 Lighting, exterior 47
 Lighting, guide-me home 49
 Lighting, welcome 49–50
 Loading 106
 Load reduction mode 106
 Locating your vehicle 24
 Locking 23–24
 Locking from the inside 29
 Locking the doors 29
 Low fuel level 103–104

M

Maintenance (advice) 114
 Maintenance, routine 88, 110

Manoeuvring aids (recommendations) 87
 Map reading lamps 41
 Markings, identification 142
 Mat 43, 88
 Menu 162
 Menu, main 144
 Menus (audio) 157–158, 171–172
 Messages 186
 Messages, quick 187
 Mirror, rear view 36
 Mirrors, door 35–36, 98
 Misfuel prevention 104
 Mountings, ISOFIX 67
 MP3 CD 148

N

Number plate lamps 127

O

Obstacle detection 99
 Oil change 109
 Oil consumption 109
 Oil, engine 109
 On-board tools 44, 116–117
 Opening the bonnet 107
 Opening the boot 23, 25, 28
 Opening the doors 23, 25, 28
 Opening the panoramic sunroof blind 42

P

Pads, brake 111
 Paint 115, 142
 Paint colour code 142
 Panoramic glass sunroof 41
 Parcel shelf, rear 45
 Parking brake 79, 112
 Parking sensors, audible and visual 99
 Parking sensors, rear 100
 Plates, identification 142
 Player, Apple® 149, 161
 Player, AppleÂ® 184
 Player, MP3 CD 148, 183
 Player, USB 147, 160, 183
 Port, USB 43, 147, 160, 183
 Pressures, tyres 112, 120, 142
 Pre-tensioning seat belts 60
 Priming pump 116
 Priming the fuel system 116
 Profiles 165, 188
 Protecting children 62–67, 69, 72
 Puncture 118, 120

R

Radar (warnings) 87
 Radio 145–146, 158, 161, 181, 183
 Radio, digital (Digital Audio
 Broadcasting - DAB) 146, 160–161, 182
 Range, AdBlue 15, 110
 RDS 159, 182

Rear screen, demisting 41–42
 Recharging the battery 133–134
 Recirculation, air 38–39
 Recovery 135
 Reduction of electrical load 106
 Regeneration of the particle filter 111
 Reinitialisation of the under-inflation
 detection system 85
 Reinitialising the remote control 27
 Reminder, key in ignition 76
 Reminder, lighting on 48
 Remote control 23–26
 Removing a wheel 120–122
 Removing the mat 43
 Replacing bulbs 123–124
 Replacing fuses 127–129
 Replacing the air filter 111
 Replacing the oil filter 111
 Replacing the passenger
 compartment filter 111
 Reservoir, screenwash 110
 Resetting the trip recorder 17
 Reversing camera 88, 100
 Roof bars 106–107
 Running out of fuel (Diesel) 116

S

Safety, children 62–67, 69, 72
 Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel) 111
 Screen menu map 162
 Screen, monochrome 17

Screen, multifunction (with audio system) 144
 Screenwash 52
 Screenwash, front 52
 Screenwash, rear 52
 SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 16, 112
 Seat angle 33
 Seat belts 59–60, 66
 Seat belts, rear 60
 Seat, rear bench 34
 Seats, front 32–33
 Seats, heated 33
 Seats, rear 34, 64
 Sensors (warnings) 88
 Serial number, vehicle 142
 Service indicator 13
 Servicing 13, 110
 Settings, equipment 17–20
 Settings, system 165, 188
 Sidelamps 47–49, 124
 Side repeater 125
 Snow chains 85, 105
 Socket, 12 V accessory 42
 Socket, auxiliary 148, 161, 183
 Socket, Jack 148, 183
 Speed limiter 90–92
 Speed limit recognition 88
 Speedometer 88
 Stability control (ESC) 58–59
 Starting a Diesel engine 104
 Starting the engine 75
 Starting the vehicle 75–77
 Starting using another battery 78, 133

Station, radio 145, 158, 181
 Stay, bonnet 107–108
 Steering mounted controls,
 audio 144–145, 156, 170
 Steering wheel, adjustment 35
 Stickers, customising ~ Stickers,
 expressive 115
 Stopping the vehicle 75–77
 Stop & Start 21, 37, 40, 83–84,
 103, 107, 111, 135
 Storage 42
 Storage box 44
 Storage wells 44
 Sunshine sensor 37
 Sun visor 42
 Switching off the engine 75
 Synchronising the remote control 27

T

Tables of fuses 127–129
 Tank, fuel 103–104
 Technical data 139, 141
 Telephone 150–152, 163–164, 184–186
 Telephone, Bluetooth with voice
 recognition 152
 Temperature, coolant 13
 Third brake lamp 126
 Time (setting) 17, 166, 189
 TMC (Traffic info) 176
 Tool box 44
 Tools 116, 116–117

Topping-up AdBlue® 113
 Total distance recorder 17
 Touch screen 19–20
 Touch screen tablet 19–20
 Towbar 105
 Towed loads 138–139, 141
 Towing another vehicle 135–136
 Traction control (ASR) 58
 Traffic information (TA) 145
 Traffic information (TMC) 176
 Trailer 105
 Trajectory control systems 58–59
 Triangle, warning 116
 Trip computer 20–22
 Trip distance recorder 17
 Tyres 112, 142
 Tyre under-inflation detection 84, 120

U

Under-inflation (detection) 84
 Unlocking 23, 25
 Unlocking from the inside 29
 Unlocking the doors 29
 Updating the date 166, 189
 Updating the time 166, 189
 USB 147, 161, 183–184

V

Ventilation 36–38

Voice commands 172–174

W

Warning and indicator lamps 8
 Warning lamp, driver's seat belt
 not fastened 60
 Warning lamps 8
 Warning lamp, seat belts 60
 Warnings and indicators 8–9
 Washing 88
 Washing (advice) 114–115
 Weights 138–139, 141
 Wheel, spare 112, 117, 120, 123
 Window controls 31
 Windscreen wipers 51, 53
 Wiper blades (changing) 52–53
 Wiper, rear 52
 Wipers 51, 53
 Wipers, automatic rain sensitive 53

Automobiles CITROËN declares, in accordance with the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End-of-Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

Printed in the EU

10-19

Automobiles CITROËN

Siège social : 7 , rue Henri Sainte-Claire Déville - 92500 RUEIL-MALMAISON

www.citroen.com

Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. NANTERRE : 642 050 199

